FOOD PACKAGING TECHNOLOGY

Dr. Subhashini S
Dr. Deepak Kasai

BOOKS ARCADE

Food Packaging Technology

Food Packaging Technology

Dr. Subhashini S
Dr. Deepak Kasai

BOOKS ARCADE
KRISHNA NAGAR, DELHI

Food Packaging Technology

Dr. Subhashini S
Dr. Deepak Kasai

BOOKS ARCADE

Regd. Office:
F-10/24, East Krishna Nagar, Near Vijay Chowk, Delhi-110051
Ph. No: +91-11-79669196, +91-9899073222
E-mail: info@booksarcade.co.in, booksarcade.pub@gmail.com
Website: www.booksarcade.co.in

Year of Publication 2023

International Standard Book Number-13: 978-81-19199-91-4

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

FOOD PACKAGING TECHNOLOGY

[1]Dr. Subhashini S, [2]Dr. Deepak Kasai,
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University)
Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, Department of Food Technology, Jain
(Deemed to be University)
Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.subhashini@jainuniversity.ac.in

Food production and distribution cannot be done without packaging. Although the primary purpose of packaging is preservation, there are various other purposes that the food maker must be aware of. Packaging has to be resistant to a range of threats, including as rodents, insects, and pathogens. If environmental elements like oxygen and water vapour are permitted to enter food packaging unchecked, they will ruin the food. Packaging itself sometimes becomes a factor that reduces shelf life. The migration of contaminating substances into the food from the packaging or the migration of food components into the packaging, for instance, may be the cause of this. Consumers, merchants, distributors, manufacturers, and farmers are just a few of the organisations that make up the food chain, and each of them offers somewhat different viewpoints on shelf life that represent the factor that is most significant and important to them. Products must be safe for customers and must fulfil their standards for quality. The product with the longest remaining shelf life is often actively sought after by customers because they believe it to be fresh.

Not only is food packaging crucial for protecting food, but it also serves as a tool for promoting the food item. Based on the most recent cutting-edge technology, food producers, merchants, and suppliers of packaging goods are collaborating more closely than ever before to create packaging solutions tailored for contemporary lifestyles. Due to this, the market is now flooded with a variety of hi-fi packaging designs and goods, particularly for food packaging. Market availability of prepared meals has increased dramatically. Freshness, health, and traceability of the items are highlighted on every food packaging. The value chain analysis for food safety now includes packaging as a key component.

Functional food packaging

There are various uses for food packaging:

Food stored in a packaging has to be protected against a variety of hazards, including temperature changes, vibration, shock, and compression. Food packaging helps to preserve or improve food quality and safety by preventing product degradation, preserving the positive effects of processing, extending shelf life, and extending shelf life. In doing so, packaging offers defence against three main categories of outside influences: chemical, biological, and physical. Chemical protection lessens compositional alterations brought on by external factors such exposure to gases (usually oxygen), moisture (gain or loss), or light (visible, infrared, or ultraviolet). A chemical barrier may be created using a wide variety of packing materials. Glass and metals provide a virtually impenetrable barrier to chemicals and other environmental contaminants, but few packages are made entirely of glass or metal since closing mechanisms are often incorporated to make filling and emptying easier. Materials with low levels of permeability may be used in closure devices. As an example, metal can lids used to enable sealing after filling and plastic caps used to assist closing both have some permeability to gases and vapours. A wide variety of barrier qualities are available in plastic packaging, however it is often more permeable than glass or metal.

Insects, rodents, and other animals are kept out by biological protection, which creates a barrier between them and diseases and spoilage-causing microbes. Biological barriers also keep the circumstances necessary to prevent senescence from occurring (ripening and aging). These barriers operate via a variety of ways, including restricting access to the product, inhibiting odour transfer, and regulating the environment within the package.

Food that has been physically protected from mechanical harm is also cushioned from shock and vibration that may be experienced during delivery. Physical barriers are often made of paperboard and corrugated materials, and because of their resistance to impacts, abrasions, and crushing damage, they are frequently employed as shipping containers and as packaging for delicate items like eggs and fresh fruits. Consumers are also safeguarded from numerous risks by appropriate physical packaging. Child-resistant latches, for instance, make it more difficult to obtain things that can be harmful. The risk posed by shattered glass containers has also decreased as a result of the adoption of plastic packaging for goods like shampoo and soda bottles.

Providing a barrier against oxygen, dust, water vapour, and other contaminants calls for packaging. A fundamental job is to keep the food's ingredients secure, hygienic, and fresh for the necessary amount of time. In order to maximise efficiency, little food products are often packaged together. Containment is necessary for granular and powdery substances. Information on the label: All food product packaging must have information on the label on the product's expiration date, how to use and dispose of the product, and the nutrition data.

Marketing: Proper food packaging with accurate information plays a crucial part in enticing prospective clients to purchase the product. In this situation, the food packaging design also plays a crucial function. The likelihood of purchase increases with design attractiveness.

Security: Choosing the right packing may be crucial in lowering the risks associated with shipping security. The food packages cannot be tampered with or polluted during shipping thanks to tamper-evident measures.

Convenience: Food packaging includes characteristics that make handling, stacking, distributing, selling, and displaying them easier. These features also include re-closing, opening, using, and recycling them.

Final point on portion control: Food packaging contains information on the precise amount of components that are present in a certain product.

Shelf Life

Most foods and drinks lose quality over time when they are stored or held. Best results may be achieved when a product's shelf life is calculated throughout the product development stage. The time between both the production and retail purchase of a food product, when the product is in a condition of adequate quality in terms of nutritional content, taste, texture, and appearance, is known as the shelf life in the United States by the Institute of Food Technologists (IFT). Shelf life is described by the Institute of Food Science and Technology (IFST) in the UK as "the time that the food product will persist safe; be certain to retain microbiological, desired sensory, physical, chemical, and functional characteristics; and comply with any label declaration of nutrition information when stored underneath the suggested conditions." The food must maintain its specified features when kept correctly up to the date known as the minimum durability. It has to say "Best before" and then have a date after it (or a reference to where the date is given on the labeling). The date may be stated by the day and the month, the month and the year, or the year alone, depending on how long the food can be stored, .

Shelf life influencing factors

1. Qualities of the product
2. Product features, such as the formulation and manufacturing conditions, or inherent factors.

The following qualities that come from the final product's composition are examples of intrinsic factors:

Availability of oxygen

1. PH/total acidity
2. Natural micro flora and surviving microbiological counts in final product
3. Natural biochemistry/chemistry of the product
4. Water activity (aw)
5. Product formulation
6. Reduction potential (Eh)
7. Added preservatives

Extrinsic factors: The following are examples of extrinsic influences, which are caused by the environment the product interacts with during its life:

Temperature

In certain circumstances, the packing material may have an impact on the food's temperature. Temperature is a critical component in influencing the rates of deteriorative reactions. Most of the cooling for packages kept in refrigerator-style display cabinets happens via conduction and convection. Radiation from the fluorescent lighting sources, which are employed to provide illumination, also contributes heat.

Relational humidity

Unless the food packaging offers a superb barrier to water vapour, the ambient environment's RH has a significant impact on the water activity (aw) of the food. Although there are several flexible plastic packaging options, none of them are totally impervious to moisture.

Gaseous atmosphere

The amount of gases present and how concentrated they are has a big impact on how quickly microbes develop around food, and the environment within the packaging is often changed as well. Vacuum packing, or removing air (and hence oxygen) from a package before closing it, is the simplest method of altering the environment. This method may be advantageous by limiting the development of aerobic microbes. Modified environment packaging's fundamental principle is to fill the inside of the container with a gas, such CO_2 or N_2, before closing it (MAP). For instance, higher levels of gases like CO_2 may be utilised to slow microbial development and so enhance the shelf life of goods. With the packing of fresh produce, meals, and baked goods, MAP is becoming more and more significant. Maintaining many different kinds of meals at a low O_2 tension, or at least, is preferable since atmospheric O_2 typically has a negative impact on the nutritional content of foods.

Light

Light is a major initiator or accelerater of many deteriorating changes in the nutritional content of meals. UV light has a wavelength between 2000 and 4000 A, whereas light in general has an electromagnetic vibration with a wavelength between 4000 and 7000 A. The UV spectrum and the shorter visible wavelengths of the spectrum are where light's catalytic actions are most noticeable. In packaged goods, colour and taste flaws may be caused by a number of variables, including light intensity and exposure time. The impact of packing materials with various light-screening capabilities on the frequency of food deteriorative reactions has been extensively studied. Fluid milk has been one of the most often examined foods, with the quantity of off-flavor development being correlated with exposure interval, light intensity, and milk surface exposure.

Chemical Reactions

A deeper grasp of the effects of various packaging options in food packaging technologies requires an understanding of how enzymes work. The circumstances present both within and outside the meal typically dictate the significance of enzymes to the food processor. Enzymic activity during food preparation and storage must be kept under control by addressing these issues. The most important variables helpful in regulating enzyme activity include temperature, aw, pH, compounds that may block enzyme function, modification of substrates, alteration of products, and preprocessing control. Particularly important in the context of packaging are three of these elements.

The quality of food (both nutritionally and aesthetically) and food safety may both deteriorate as a result of several chemical reactions that take place in meals. Depending on the individual food and the processing or storage circumstances, these reaction types might include a variety of reactants or substrates. Several variables that may be influenced by packaging, including as light, O2 concentration, temperature, and aw, affect the speeds of various chemical processes. As a result, the package may, in certain cases, play a significant role in regulating these variables and, in turn, indirectly, the pace of the damaging chemical processes.

Materials Used in Food Packaging

The shelf life of a food product is significantly influenced by the design and structure of the package. The freshness and purity of the item is maintained throughout distribution and storage using the appropriate packaging materials and technology. Glass, metals (aluminium, foils and laminates, tinplate, and tin-free steel), paper and paperboards, and polymers have all historically been employed in food packaging. Additionally, a greater range of polymers in both rigid and flexible forms have been developed. To take use of decorative or practical qualities of each material, food packaging nowadays often combines several materials. The environmental factor of packing may change as research to improve food packaging proceeds. Section 409 of the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act controls packaging materials by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), .

Glass

Glass has been used in food packing for a very long time; the first glass food containers are said to have emerged about 3000 BC (Sacharow and Griffin 1980). High temperatures are used to melt a combination of sodium carbonate (the melting agent), limestone/calcium carbonate, silica (the glass former), and alumina (stabilisers) into a thick liquid mass which is then poured into moulds to create glass containers. Additionally, recycled shattered glass (cullet), which may make up as much as 60% of total raw materials, is utilised in the production of glass. Surface coating is often applied to glass containers used during food packaging in order to lubricate the manufacturing process, prevent line jams, and prevent scratching or surface abrasion. Additionally, glass coatings improve and maintain the bottle's strength to minimise breaking. Thinner glass may be used by manufacturers thanks to improved break resistance, which makes it lighter and better for disposal and transportation.

Glass offers various benefits for food-packaging applications since it is odourless and chemically inert with almost all food products: It keeps products fresh for a long time without affecting taste or flavour since it is impermeable to gases and vapours. Glass is suitable for heat sterilisation of both low-acid and high-acid foods due to its capacity to resist high processing temperatures. Glass may be made in a wide variety of forms, is hard, and offers superior insulation. Glass is transparent, allowing customers to view the goods, yet differences in glass tint might shield things that need to be protected from light. Glass packaging is also better for the environment since it can be recycled and reused.

Like any substance, glass has inherent drawbacks. Though attempts have been made to employ thinner glass, its high weight raises the expense of shipping. Its brittleness and vulnerability to breaking due to internal pressure, impact, or thermal shock are further issues. The most adaptable kind of packaging is metal. Excellent physical protection and barrier qualities, formability and aesthetic possibilities, recyclability, and customer acceptability are all included in this product. Aluminum and steel are the two metals that are used in packaging the most often.

Plastics

Polymerization, also known as condensation polymerization or addition polymerization, is the process used to create plastics. In polycondensation, low-molecular weight leftovers like methanol and water are produced together with the growth of the polymeric chains by condensation interactions between molecules. Monomers having at least two functional groups, such as amine, alcohol, or carboxylic groups, are involved in polycondensation. When a number of molecules join to produce a bigger molecule without the release of byproducts, this process is known as polyaddition, and it is used to construct polymer chains. Unsaturated monomers are involved in poly-addition; double or triple bonds are broken to connect monomer chains. The use of plastic for food containers has a number of benefits. Plastics are flexible and moldable, allowing for the creation of sheets, forms, and structures with a great deal of creative freedom. Plastics are affordable, lightweight, and have a broad variety of physical and visual qualities because they are chemically resistant. In reality, a lot of plastics may be used in manufacturing processes where the package is created, filled, and sealed on the same production line since they can be heat sealed, are simple to print on, and can be easily integrated. Plastics' varied permeability to light, gases, vapours, and low molecular weight compounds is a serious drawback.

Paper and paper board

Paper and paperboards have been used for food packaging since the 17th century, but their use really took off in the latter half of the 19th century (Kirwan 2003). The interwoven network of cellulose fibres generated from wood and created by employing sulphate and sulfite to create paper and paperboard is a sheet material. To create the finished paper product, the fibres are then pulped, bleaching, and treated with substances like slimicides and reinforcing agents. The additives used in paper and paperboard food packaging are subject to FDA regulation. Corrugated boxes, milk cartons, folding cartons, bags & sacks, and wrapping paper all often employ paper and paperboards. Other examples of paper and paperboard items are tissue paper, paper plates, and paper cups.

Because plain paper has weak barrier qualities and cannot be heat sealed, it should not be used to store food for extended periods of time. Paper is nearly usually coated, laminated, treated, or impregnated with substances like waxes, resins, or lacquers to increase its functional and protective characteristics when used as primary packaging (i.e., in contact with food).

Selection Criteria Of Packaging Material For Raw Foods:

Raw meats are now packaged with preservatives, which has significantly altered how these items are processed and marketed. The trade in red meat carcasses has shrunk to insignificant proportions in many developed countries as a result of the widespread use of vacuum packaging for primal cuts of red meat, and the trade in chilled raw meats has grown significantly globally while frozen meat trade has decreased as a result. Consolidation of meat-packing operations has been made possible by the increased stability of vacuum-packaged goods. The majority of meat is sold to customers in freshly or recently cut forms, with minimal further processing done to remove the contaminants picked up during the killing and breaking activities necessary to turn carcass flesh into edible portions. The microbiological degradation of fresh meat by microbes is a risk. These bacteria may range from diseases like E. coli O157:H7 to slime- and stench-forming slime moulds that are completely innocuous. Reduced temperature, often in conjunction with decreased oxygen during distribution, and slowing down normal microbial development are the main methods for delaying the rotting of fresh meat. The hue of myoglobin, which is purple in fresh meat due to low oxygen levels, is likewise transformed to the vivid cherry red oxymyoglobin that is typical of most fresh meat that is provided to and approved by customers when exposed to air. By mechanically removing air from the interiors of gas barrier multilayer flexible material pouches that are then sealed by heating the end after filling, reduced oxygen packing is accomplished, .

Seafood, including fish

Fish varieties are among the most challenging meals to keep fresh because of their innate microbiological populations, many of which are psychrophilic, or able to develop at cold temperatures. In addition, a bacterium called Clostridium botulinum type E, which is nonproteolytic anaerobic and capable of producing toxins without causing spoiling, may be present in seafood.

Most seafood has a very limited, few-day shelf life under chilled storage for high-quality products. The restaurant owner or customer cannot get the finest seafood with this short time frame since there is not enough time from receipt to distribution and presentation. Fresh fish is often packaged in moisture-resistant materials, however these materials may not always be microbially safe. For the lining of corrugated fiberboard boxes, simple polyethylene film is often used. Polyethylene is used to protect the structural casing from internal wetness in addition to retaining moisture in the product. When seafood is frozen, the packaging is often made of a moisture-resistant substance and structure such polyethylene pouches or polyethylene-coated paperboard boxes. All seafood has low acid, hence high pressure heating or retorting is required to provide sterility in hermetically sealed metal cans. As a result, canning seafood is very similar to canning meat.

Fresh produce and fruits

For the fresh produce industry, rising consumer demand for a variety of harvested fruits and vegetables (raw and freshly cut) has resulted in brisk sales growth and new market potential. One of the most difficult uses for the food business, nevertheless, is still their preservation. Physiological oxygen consumption, carbon dioxide generation, and water vapour production are promoted by the alive, "breathing" nature of fresh food. Fresh product is more susceptible to physiological responses and water loss than microbial ones when it comes to rotting, hence steps to increase the shelf life are made to prevent these processes. The possibility that produce might go into respiratory anaerobiosis if the oxygen level is almost extinguished is a significant issue. The mechanisms in respiratory anaerobiosis yield taste molecules that are not desired. Extensive packaging techniques are being developed and have been in order to reduce the generation of these unwanted end products. The majority of them have components that allow air to enter the container to make up for the oxygen that the respiring product consumes. High gas permeability plastic films, microperforated plastic films, plastic films broken up with mineral fill, and films made from temperature-sensitive polymers have all been suggested or utilised commercially.

Both the retail and the hotel/restaurant/institutional markets have made significant use of fresh-cut vegetables, particularly lettuce, cabbage, and carrots. As a result of trimming, cleaning, and size reduction, the produce has a higher surface-to-volume ratio and fluids from the inside are released, which speeds up respiration and microbial development. Contrarily, commercial fresh-cutting processes often outperform traditional methods of handling fresh produce in terms of cleanliness, efficiency, lowered temperatures, and the careful use of microbicides like chlorine. Uncut fruit may be packaged in a wide variety of ways, including with old-fashioned wood boxes, with more modern, less costly injection-molded polypropylene baskets, and with polyethylene liners within waxed corrugated fiberboard containers. A large portion of the packaging is designed to assist slowly down moisture loss from fresh food or to withstand moisture evaporating or dropping off the product (or, rarely, its related ice) in order to maintain the structure during distribution. Perforated polyethylene pouches for potatoes or apples are an example of packaging that understands the problem of anaerobic respiration and contains purposeful perforations to assure air access into the container.

Vegetables are prepared for freezing by being washed, trimmed, blanched, and frozen either before or after packing. There are fewer germs after blanching and other processing steps. Produce may be individually frozen (IQF) quickly using cold air or cryogenic liquids before packing, or frozen after packaging, such as when utilising paperboard boxes. To prevent moisture loss, frozen food packaging is often paperboard covered with polyethylene or monolayer polyethylene pouches, which are both quite straightforward. For both adults and children, a snack of freshly cut veggies, bread sticks, and dip makes for a rather mouthwatering and wholesome treat.

Proteins, lipids, carbs, enzymes, vitamins, and minerals are all present in milk, which is a complex combination of water. It is a very perishable product with a high spoiling potential and may quickly deteriorate in quality and safety due to its unique composition and a pH that is near to neutral. Containment, protection, convenience, and communication are just a few of the purposes that packaging may fulfil. Protection, however, is the most crucial of these. Milk and dairy products are shielded from environmental, mechanical, physical, chemical, and mechanical risks by packaging. Additionally, it shields the product from deterioration or contamination by harmful microbes, insects, or rodents during storage and distribution. It also prevents the loss of beneficial taste components or the pickup of unfavourable aromas. Besides being compatible with the dairy product it contains, recyclable or usable, tamper-evident, nontoxic, aesthetically pleasing, machinable, and useful in terms of form, size, and disposability, an effective packaging system should also meet a number of additional criteria.

Prediction of Shelf Life of Food

With the necessity to monitor food freshness, a technique called shelf life prediction has emerged. The most popular method of determining shelf life right now is static testing. This entails keeping vegetables on a shelf and letting it become old. However, this is inaccurate, takes a long time, and wastes food. Fresh food may now be evaluated and given a day estimate thanks to modern technology. Businesses at every step of the food supply chain profit from shelf life prediction. AI has also improved its power and accessibility.

Knowing and estimating how long food will last is crucial. This guarantees that superior goods will be delivered to the final location. Additionally, as consumers are more inclined to purchase and eat fresher product, it helps decrease food waste.

The following advantages of evaluating shelf life:

1. Sending client's fresher product
2. Lower transportation, processing, and storage expenses
3. Dynamic routing of produce to the correct location at the right time
4. Moving up the food recovery ladder in terms of food recovery

In addition to static testing, the food system predicts shelf life using four basic methodologies. The majority gauge the health of fresh fruit both within and outside.

Spectroscopy

Light is used in spectroscopy to examine a fruit or vegetables interior condition. Spectroscopy is being used by researchers to analyses food in a variety of ways. With the help of this technology, you can test the freshness and shelf life of fruits and vegetables in real time. To further increase accuracy, you may integrate it with other data, .

Imaging

The present status of produce may be determined via imaging in the visual field as well as outside the visible spectrum. Smartphone cameras are quite effective at analyzing what the human eye perceives. However, since most of the ripening takes place below the surface, we still struggle to see it. Since spectral cameras can detect what the eye cannot, they can perceive more of the ripening and decaying processes.

Chemical Evaluation

The majority of fruits release a gas called ethylene when they mature. You can predict when fruit will start to ripen by regularly monitoring ethylene levels. Although most fruits and vegetables contain ethylene, it may be challenging to evaluate the amount in specific foods. The adoption of this technique is constrained throughout the supply chain since artificial ripening also consumes ethylene.

Temperature

Food must be kept cold throughout the supply chain. Shelf life may be compromised by a damaged cold chain. By observing temperature, you can keep track of the shelf life of fresh goods. The temperature of a single product item at any given time is useless. To obtain a better understanding of shelf life, you may examine the fruit or vegetable's temperature history and even combine it with other data.

The development of pathogens including Listeria, E. Coli, Samonella, and Campylobacter must be controlled in order to ensure food safety. Microbial growth kinetics and the effect of environmental parameters (temperature, relative humidity, and oxygen content) are studied in order to forecast shelf life. A estimated shelf life follows the definition of the packaging environment to halt growth.

Given that pathogens like Listeria cannot be identified at concentrations lower than 3 cfu/ml, predictive microbiology has been used to characterise the presence of pathogens. Accurate shelf life predictions take into account various microbial growth kinetics under various time-temperature conditions. It is crucial to make this challenging forecast since refrigerator temperatures vary in distribution, retail, and consumer settings.

Knowing how active package solutions will affect a product's bottom line can help develop the business case for solutions like sulphur dioxide-emitting packaging to reduce fungus in packaged blueberries. Intelligent packaging is calibrated to imitate microbial growth or detects byproducts like carbon dioxide and hydrogen sulphide to assess the shelf life of individual packaging, secondary packaging, or complete pallet loads. Put the solution to use at the supplier and customer levels if it is beneficial.

Fruits and vegetables that haven't been processed, as well as frozen meat and poultry that's been in contact with heated temperatures, may have enzymes that change the flavour (lipoxygenase). On a mole-to-mole basis, the reactive compounds' reactions with active packing solutions, such controlled release citric acid, are predicted. Food shelf life is predicted using the protein-reducing sugar reaction for non-enzymatic browning (Maillard reaction). Additionally, predicted shelf-life allows accelerated shelf-life testing, minimising the time needed for results. In essence, it creates a connection between shelf life in "regular" and accelerated circumstances. It's crucial to remember that this depends on deteriorative processes being constant in both accelerated and conventional shelf-life scenarios. It's intriguing that this projection may be used to assess the costs-benefits and consequences of increasing temperatures in frozen and refrigerated environments, as well as the implications on food waste.

CHAPTER 2

EQUIPMENTS AND MACHINERY IN FOOD PACKAGING

[1]Dr. Amar Shankar, [2]Dr. Ashuthosh P,
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.amar@jainuniversity.ac.in

To enclose or protect things for distribution, storage, sale, and usage, packaging combines science, art, and technology. There are many different types of packaging and processing equipment for food items, many of which are strikingly similar, so when it comes to packing machinery, this is true. Identifying which pieces of equipment, if any, provide a distinct advantage over the others is one of the main challenges in choosing machinery. Additionally, the degree of adaptation may need to be taken into account; just as it is useless to buy a machine that can do all tasks when only one is required, a machine with insufficient adaptability may become a bottleneck in processes requiring varying output.

Depending on the needs of the production and the level of capitalization, machinery may run intermittently or continuously. Typically, intermittent equipment will take one package or a small number of packages, process them all at once, and then move them on to the next stage of the process. A continuous operation machine accepts a stream of packages and performs the operation without pausing or slowing the rate at which the material is moving overall. A soft-drink bottler requires several thousand fills per minute to be competitive, thus although a four station manual-feed filling process could work for a small vineyard, it would be worthless for them. Additionally, while continuous machinery is more cost-effective at high throughput rates, it may not make sense to operate a high-capacity operation for only a few hours per week due to low demand, although in the smallest of markets this may occur due to the use of used machinery and a lack of properly scaled equipment, .

Machines that fill, feed, measure, and meter

Fillers and feeders have the responsibility of taking goods in a predetermined number or quantity to fill the constructed package. For this purpose, a broad variety of equipment exists, many of which are capable of handling delicate items or challenging materials like thick pastes and creams. The most basic of them may be used to load and dump baskets, cups, or trays with material. They work best with loose and granular materials like cereal and animal food, but they can also be used to package single items provided they are correctly directed into feed chutes leading to the packing machine. These could be equipped with weighing sensors so that a net-weight fill could be delivered directly to the product, and they could employ a combination of tiny fill trays to more precisely estimate the net weight. Auger metering is a technique where product is distributed into a packaging depending on timing or counting the revolutions of an auger that distributes the product.

System of Form-Fill-Seal

FFS systems, as the name implies, form packages from rolls around a central mandrel that incorporates a product fill tube. They are preferred methods for many food items because they enable the forming, filling, and sealing of packages of almost all types of products, from solids to liquids like milk. Usually, they are multi-head devices that create little sauce packets for use in fast-food restaurants.

Using cans and tubes for packaging

For canned fruits, canned beans, evaporated milk, sweetened condensed milk, and other foods, tinplate cans are utilised. The machine that fills the cans with the product takes the cans that are open at the rear and loads them into it. After that, depending on the product, the lids are put on and sealed with either a single or double seam. Whipping cream is stored and transported in aerosol cans. In these, a pressurized propellant is inserted into the product.

Machines that shrink wrap

When packaging one or more items with a thermoplastic film, which shrinks when heated and forms a tight wrap around the object that is known as shrink wrapping. Polymer plastic film is the main component of shrink wrap or shrink film. This substance contracts tightly over whatever it is covering when heated. The package may either go through a heat tunnel on a conveyor or be heated using a hand-held heat gun. Many different forms of packaging, including cartons, boxes, beverage cans, and pallet loads, are often overwrapped with shrink wrap. Shrink wrapping may be used to stabilize, unitize, maintain cleanliness, provide some tamper resistance to, among other things, a range of items. Foods like cheese and paneer may use it as their main coating.

Automated Systems

Robotic activities are most successful when they are repetitive and predictable but also call for the management of heavy objects, as with palletizers, or for quick, precise pick-and-place tasks that need consistent, accurate output at a pace that human operators would find challenging. The second use is more typical in food packaging activities, and one of the earliest robotics combinations in the food packaging business was in the high-speed filling of boxes of various chocolates where a variety of different goods had to be precisely positioned in a moving container. Delta robots are articulated manipulators mounted on rotating bases that are used in many robotic installations to replicate the human arm. In many packing procedures, they have been effectively implemented. These devices, which were first created by Raymond Calve at the E.coli Polytechnique Federale de Lausanne, may be built using lightweight carbon Fibre components and high-speed actuators to give exceptionally precise high-speed operation for the handling of tiny light items. They have been used in a variety of purposes, from creating bakeries and sweets to machine components.

Food packaging technology

In the food sector, packaging technology may be a key to competitive advantage, making it of strategic significance to a corporation. The end user's demands and desires can be met, new distribution channels can be opened, presentation quality can be improved, prices can be reduced, profits can be increased, product/brand distinction can be enhanced, and customer logistical services may be improved. The necessity for an effective logistics service must be carefully weighed against the commercial need to save costs in the supply chain. These factors include the core technical criteria for food safety and product integrity. Also, it is necessary to fulfill the marketing objectives of protecting and enhancing brand image via value-added box design. Design elements that express unique, aesthetically pleasant, ergonomic, utilitarian, and/or ecologically conscious qualities may be used in the latter. As a result, it is always difficult to deliver pack performance that is both affordable and meets the demands and preferences of the user, with health and safety always coming first. The environmental impact of both the goods and the services needed to supply them must be reduced. Several important factors, most notably law and political pressure, continuously increase this task. There is a push to use less packaging and to dispose of less packaging trash in general.

Manufacturing and distribution systems, and subsequently packaging systems, have taken on a crucial role as interfaces of supplier-distributor interactions as a result of the increased significance of logistics in the food supply. As a result, in the field of packaging innovation and design, the role of the market and the supply chain is becoming more important. The aforementioned debate highlights the need for individuals engaged in package design and development to consider ever evolving technical, marketing, legal, logistical, and environmental considerations. As a result, it is argued that those involved in packaging need to develop a comprehensive understanding of the impact of a variety of factors, including quality, production, engineering, marketing, food technology R&D, purchasing, legal issues, finance, the supply chain, and environmental management.

The evolution of packaging: A historical viewpoint

The pack has changed over the past 200 years from merely serving as a product's container to becoming a crucial component of the overall product design. Take the transition from packing tomato ketchup in glass bottles to squeezable co-extruded multi-layer plastic bottles with oxygen barrier material for long shelf life. Several significant packaging advances have been accelerated or precipitated by military needs. Examples include the development of food canning in Napoleonic France and the rise in the use of paper-based packaging for the marketing of different goods, such as soft cheeses and malted milk, as a result of the First World War's tinplate scarcity for steel cans. After the Second World War, there has been a remarkable diversification in the types of materials and packaging used due to the exponential development in demand for pre-packaged meals and food service packaging. All of these have been made feasible by advancements in machine technology, packaging materials, and food science and technology. This is a summary of some packaging advances during the last 200 years. 1800–1850s. Nicolas Separate developed a method for thermally preserving food in hermetically sealed glass jars in 1809 in France. Peter Durand invented the soldered tinplate canister and popularized the use of containers for heat-preserved food in 1810. Handmade cans of "patent preserved meats" were prepared in England for the Navy. Francis Wolle from Pennsylvania in the United States invented the paper bag-making machine in 1852.

The use of corrugated materials for packaging was patented by Albert L. Jones in the USA in 1871 during the 1870s. Oliver Long received a patent for lined corrugated materials in 1874. The first folding carton constructed by a machine was developed in 1879 by Robert Gair of New York. The first cereal was packed in a folding box by Quaker Oats in the 1880s, in 1884.

It's a good idea to have a backup plan in place in case the backup plan fails. Ohioan Michael J. Owens came up with the concept of completely automated bottle production in 1899. At the Owens Bottle Machine Company, Owens had commercialized the industrial procedure by 1903. G.W. Maxwell began selling paraffin wax-coated paper milk cartons in 1906 in San Francisco and Los Angeles. Cream was stored in waxed paperboard boxes in the 1910s. Regenerated cellulose film was created in 1912. The paper bottle, a folded blank box marketed as Pure-Pak in 1915 by Toledo, Ohio, resident John Van Wormer, was supplied flat for further folding, gluing, paraffin wax coating, filling with milk, and sealing at the dairy.

The 1920s saw the commercialization of the usage of frozen meals in retail packs utilizing cartons with waxed paper wrappers when Clarence Birdseye started Birdseye Seafood's in New York in 1923. Du Pont invented Cellophane in 1927 after perfecting the cellulose casting technique. 1930s. a number of US breweries started offering bottled beer in 1935. Imperial

Chemical Industries Ltd. commercialized ethylene polymerization for the first time in 1939. Subsequently, ICI and Du Pont collaborated to make polyethylene. Since the 1960s, PE has been widely utilized in packaging.

1940s. The US military employed aerosol canisters to spray insecticides during World War II. After the war, culinary goods like pasteurized processed cheese and spray dessert toppings became readily available thanks to the invention of the aerosol can. Polyvinylidene chloride, often known as Saran, was first employed as a moisture barrier resin in 1946.

The retort pouch for heat-processed food was first created by the US military in the 1950s. Japan has historically utilized the bag the most commercially. Aluminum trays for frozen meals, aluminum cans, and squeezable plastic bottles were first created. For instance, Colman's of Norwich, England, introduced the Jif squeezable lemon-shaped plastic pack of lemon juice in 1956. Tetra Pak introduced their low-density polyethylene extrusion coated paperboard tetrahedral milk carton in 1956.

For carbonated beverages and beers, the two-piece drawn and wall-ironed can was created in the USA. For tinplate food cans, the soudronic welded side-seam was created. Tamper evident bottle neck shrink-sleeves were created by Fuji Seal in Japan. These were the forerunners of shrink-sleeve labels. Aluminium roll-on pilfer-proof caps were used in the spirits market. A tin-free steel can was created. The Metal Box Corporation created the ring-pull opening for beverages in cans, while Tetra Pak introduced the Tetra Brik Aseptic rectangular carton system for long-life ultra-heated milk in 1967. One of the most common pack formats for a variety of liquid meals and drinks across the globe is the TBA carton.

1970s: PVC was used for beverage bottles; the bar code system for retail packaging was introduced in the United States; in the methods to make food packaging tamper evident were introduced; boil-in-the-bag frozen meals have been introduced inside the UK; MAP retail packs were introduced to the US, Scandinavia, and Europe; and a variety of aseptic form, fill, and seal flexible packaging systems were developed. The injection stretch blow-moulded PET bottle, created by Du Pont in 1973, was used for colas and other carbonated beverages.

For squeezable sauce bottles and retor plastic containers for ambient meals that might be microwaved, co-extruded plastics with oxygen barrier plastic components are used. Paperboard for ready meals that is PET-coated and dual-ovenable. Commercialization of the canned draught beer widget has led to a wide variety of widgets being offered to create a frothy head in canned and glass bottled beers. Sapporo, the oldest-continuing beer brand in Japan, introduced the contoured can for its lager beer in 1988. It had a ring-pull that allowed the whole top to be removed, converting the pack into a convenient drinking vessel.

Shrink-sleeve plastic labels for glass bottles were quickly adopted by the drinks industry. Shaped can technology became more widely adopted in the USA and Europe as drinks companies looked for ways to better differentiate their brands. Digital printing of graphics on carton sleeves and labels for food packaging was introduced in the UK. Protection, hygiene, product quality, and convenience have been the primary propellants of advancements in food technology and packaging since the invention of the food can in the 19th century. Consumers who lead busy lives are increasingly in need of packaging that provides both convenience and high-quality food. Particularly in the 1980s, innovations like gas barrier plastic materials used in aseptic FFS plastic containers for desserts, soups, but instead sauces, plastic retail tray packs of premium meat cuts in a modified atmosphere, and retort plastic containers for ambient storage ready meals that can be microwave heated, saw widespread adoption by the grocery trade. A packaging innovation often requires the convergence of many technological breakthroughs before it is implemented. They have included advancements in post-harvest technologies, new retail formats, and home appliances like refrigerators, freezers, and microwaves. They have also included transportation and infrastructural innovations. For instance, the invention of the microwave oven sparked the creation of convenient food packing for a variety of cuisines. For an invention to be successful, the sociocultural, demographic, consumer lifestyle, and economic environments must also create enough market demand.

Supply of food and the function of packaging as a barrier

Due to the growth of a global food market and the adaptation to consumer, distribution, regulatory, and technical requirements, demand and supply for packaging for consumer goods are continuously changing. Broad external factors that have an impact on packaging for quickly moving consumer goods may be summed up as follows:

The utilization of cutting-edge seed types, enhanced animal husbandry practices, and crop protection technologies that increase crop yields and quality have all contributed to a more than twofold increase in the global food output during the last fifty years. Technological advancements in food production, processing, and transportation have made it possible to produce packaged food in large quantities, with packaging playing a crucial role. Many goods are now more reasonably priced because to the resulting economies of scale and the fierce industrial competitiveness. In developed countries, consumer demand for pre-packaged food is still rising, and the world's population is expanding as well. In newly industrialized nations that are undergoing fast urbanization, this is more and more the case.

Large retail chains and the food service sector have developed in response to shifting customer habits. A highly competitive combination of logistics, trade, marketing, and customer service know-how, all of which are reliant on good packaging, has contributed to their success. They have contributed to the tremendous increase in the variety of items on the market, which has been made possible by technical advancements, notably those in packaging. International operations of the retail, food production, and packaging supply sectors are still being expanded. A decrease in trade barriers is increasingly helping companies source items from throughout the globe. The result has been a rise in competition and pressure on prices to decline. Industry structure has been more rationalized as a result of increased rivalry, often via mergers and acquisitions. It has resulted in the adoption of novel materials and forms, improved automation, an expansion of the variety of pack sizes, and a decrease in the cost per unit for packing. The reevaluation of brands and pack designs is another impact of mergers among manufacturing and retailing organizations on packaging. The expansion of global food supply chains and growing market segmentation have accelerated the introduction of advanced logistical packaging methods. Packaging is a crucial component of the logistical system and helps to minimize or reduce waste formation in the food supply. the routes via which food is distributed from the farm to the consumer. Nevertheless, it should be noted that a few links in the chain allow the usage of returnable packages. Packaging contributes to the conservation of natural resources by preventing waste and product deterioration and by shielding goods until they have served their purpose. The main functions of packaging are to confine, safeguard/preserve food, and provide information to the consumer. By doing this, food waste may be reduced and consumer health can be protected.

Methods for distributing food

To guarantee customer safety and product integrity, packaging has been used in a number of ways in conjunction with advancements in food science, processing, and preservation methods. The fact that the contents of billions of packs are eaten safely every day illustrates the efficacy of both pack-aging and food technology in this respect. An ideal degree of packing is necessary to reduce food waste across the supply chain and save money. Between 30% and 50% of the food produced in many less developed nations is lost owing to insufficient preservation, protection, storage, and transportation methods. Food waste before it reaches the customer is only 2-3% in industrialized nations with widespread contemporary processing, packaging, and delivery systems. Compared to between 10% and 20% of unpackaged food, less than 1% of packaged food is wasted.

Packaging and the Environment Industry Council

More money might be lost due to food waste than merely the price of spoiled goods. There can be expenses for things like salvage, disposal, administration, replacement, insurance, and legal action. There is also the risk for a loss of client goodwill, which is crucial to take into account in the modern, fiercely competitive market. A package should save more money than it costs, according to a Tetra Pak maxim.

Packaging's importance to society

Food packaging has never been more important to society or, ironically, drawn as much negative media coverage and government attention. The following are the results of the survey. A vast array of laws, rules, standards of conduct, and guidelines control food packaging. The following are some potential social advantages of packaging:

1. Prevents or minimizes product damage and food spoiling, which conserves energy and essential nutrients and safeguards the consumer's health.
2. For instance, a consumer purchases 454 g of fresh corn on the cob from the grocery store, but only consumes around 170 g of it before throwing the rest away and adding it to the local landfill. The same volume of frozen, edible maize may be contained in a plastic bag weighing no more than 5 g.
3. Reduces the price of many foods by mass manufacturing at a lower cost and effective distribution of large quantities. Moreover, savings come from less product damage.
4. Reduces or eliminates the possibility of adulteration and tampering
5. Presents food in a clean, often visually pleasing manner.
6. Provides crucial information about the product and enables customers to make well-informed selections.
7. Provide practical convenience during preparation or usage, saving time.
8. Promotes products in a cutthroat market and expands customer choice
9. Enables the creation of contemporary retail models that provide customers with year-round access to food from across the globe and the convenience of a one-stop shop.
10. Reduces waste by extending the shelf life of the product with the advantage of longer usage.
11. Conserves energy by using ambient packs instead of frozen or refrigerated ones for distribution and storage.
12. The food sector is aware of the following current public packaging concerns:
13. The amount of packaging trash in municipal garbage and packaging litter
14. Expense of recovering abandoned packaging from municipal garbage and disposing of it
15. Pollution caused by disposal techniques, such as landfilling and incineration

Simplicity of use

Perception of excessive packing as a consequence of ostensibly increased ullage brought on by product settling

Label legibility

1. Accuracy of the data on labels
2. Food contamination brought on by packaging itself
3. Packaging-related mishaps.
4. Definitions and the fundamental purposes of packaging

There are several definitions of packaging that represent various accents. For instance:

1. A strategy for assuring safe, cost-effective delivery to the final customer in good condition.
2. A systematized approach to preparing products for usage after transit, distribution, storage, and sale.
3. A techno-commercial function that aims to maximize sales while minimizing delivery costs.

The fundamental purposes of packing are, however, more precisely stated:

The physical shape and nature of the product will determine its containment. For instance, a viscous and acidic tomato concentrate or a hygroscopic free-flowing powder

Protection: avoiding mechanical harm brought on by the distribution-related risks

Preservation is the avoidance or blockage of chemical, biochemical, and microbiological deterioration. Details about the product, such as its usage, ingredients, and legal requirements.

For pack handlers and users across the packaging chain, convenience. Presentation factors include material type, form, size, color, and retail display units. Pack persona, for instance, may be communicated via the use of typography, symbols, images, advertising, and color to make a strong visual effect.

Promotion: free additional goods, new goods, discounts, etc. Economics, for instance, the effectiveness of production, distribution, and storage. Environmental stewardship: throughout production, usage, reuse, recycling, and disposal.

Packing technique

Packaging may also be described as a way to distribute goods to consumers securely and affordably in line with the organization's marketing plan. A packaging strategy is a plan that takes into account every detail and procedure involved in getting the packaged product to the customer.

Well defined manufacturing and marketing plans that are in line with the corporate strategy or purpose of the company should be partnered with packaging strategy. Management from technical/quality, production, procurement, marketing, supply chain, legal, and financial departments are important participants in the strategy development process. While performing the marketing role, packaging is crucial from a tactical and strategic standpoint. Unique or creative packaging is often a key to the competitive advantage businesses seek in markets where brands compete. For big brewers in the UK, for instance, the creation of the renowned widget for bottled draught beers created new marketing possibilities.

Design and development of packaging

Successful innovation in packaging materials, shapes, designs, or processes requires marketing pull. Even the most brilliant technology advancement has a little probability of being adopted unless there is a commercial need.

The structure of a packaging strategy

Technical specifications for the product and its packaging to guarantee pack performance and product preservation/protection during the pack's shelf life during shipping and storage till consumption

Customers appreciated packaging and product attributes including appearance, taste, usability, and environmental performance. In order to provide a unique brand proposition, safeguard brand integrity, and meet projected demand at a profit that is acceptable for the marketing plan, there are marketing criteria for packaging and product innovation.

Issues for the supply chain, such compatibility with the current pack range and production system. Laws and its effects on operations and finances, such as rules governing food safety, labeling, weights and measures, and other elements that come into touch with food. Environmental demands or pressures and their effects, such as light-weighting to lessen the impact of taxes or levies on the quantity of packaging used, are innovative but may be accepted later if the market circumstances alter in a way that favors it. To find possibilities and reduce the costs and risks associated with the creation, production, and marketing of a new product, specialized technical research, marketing research, and consumer research firms are used.

Focus group consumer research, for instance, served as the foundation for the dramatic redesign of tea bag packets in the UK. The end solution was a stiff upright carton without the typical film over-wrap that was difficult to open, but with an inherent simple tear-off board strip. 40 tea bags are stored in nitrogen gas-flushed metallized polyester pouches for easy access in a tea caddy or cabinet. Pouches may be contained in a single pouch or many pouches in a carton form. The bag keeps the tea fresh, minimizes spills, and gives off a fresh impression. For more shelf impact, the carton form, label, and color schemes were also revised. Retailers and other manufacturers have embraced this packaging idea for their branded teas in large numbers.

In general, new product innovations that are executed as a comprehensive idea with packaging as an integrated component of the entire are more successful. The unique white container for the rum-based spirit drink Malibu, which represents the coconut component, is an illustration of how the complete product idea has been used. There are several examples, including dispensing packets for mints and cartons having subsections for microwave cooking of frozen pizzas, popcorn, and chips. Distribution and packaging design should ideally be taken into account at the product concept phase. When a new product is made and its packaging materials, shape, and design are developed to meet market demands, there may be an inadequate level of communication between the marketing and distribution divisions. Only after that are handling and distribution taken into account. Correcting a product failure on the market brought on by insufficient protective packing may be quite expensive. While developing a complete product idea, marketing teams should be cognizant of distribution limitations. Increased profitability from novel products and package designs may not be realized due to high distribution costs if new packaging units are difficult to integrate into current distribution networks. It is important to think about whether packs are made for their marketability or for the practicality of their physical distribution. If it weren't for the importance of distribution expenses, especially those for refrigerated food, this may not necessarily be significant.

The creation of packs is typically a labor-intensive and imaginative process. Resource problems and communication challenges between corporate units might prevent pack development. The creation of packaging may go more quickly with the usage of multidisciplinary teams. As a result, the final product's quality is improved by reducing issues brought on by potential design implications of sequential development. Packaging development teams have the capacity to speed up the initial design phase with the use of computer aided design and fast prototyping tools for design and physical modeling of packs.

In the creation of packaging, careful project planning is crucial. In order to establish a realistic time schedule, it is especially important to properly arrange order lead times for packaging component orders with suppliers early on.

Due to the seasonal demand for beverage containers and the resulting shortage of spare manufacturing capacity, there can be problems with a supplier's availability of injection stretch blow-molding equipment.

About the definition: At the moment of pack filling forward, packaging in product distribution aims to maximize sales while lowering the entire cost of distribution. Instead of only being seen as a cost to be reduced, packaging is seen as a benefit that should be maximized. The packaging development function's top priority is package optimization.

Value for money is the goal, which is to achieve the best possible balance between performance, quality, and cost. It entails a thorough analysis of each cost component of the packaging system and an assessment of how each component contributes to the system's functioning.

The economics of the supply chain should take into consideration all those activities - including packing - involved in the delivery of the product to the ultimate user. Packaging should be seen as a component of the process of product manufacture and distribution. In certain instances, this might be expanded to account for the expenses of garbage collection, sorting, and recovery.

Standard design and development phases for a new plastic bottle pack Define your packaging approach. Create a packaging brief and look for ideas for packs: both practical and pictorial concept evaluation, review, and approval by a multidisciplinary packaging team. Selecting a pack component supplier in cooperation with buying. Expense of tooling; collaborate with suppliers to develop and engineer new bottle and cap moulds Prototype test pack measurements, drop impact, and leak, compression, cap fit, etc.

Purchase artwork for labels

Evaluation of barrier efficacy and shelf life. Model and sample manufacturing includes casing, labeling, and filling systems.

Prototype sent to market

Design, budget, and assess the prototype transit pack's drop, compression, and other performance metrics. Assess the impact of elements impacting the performance of stacking, such as brick or column stacking, relative humidity, wetness, pallet design, etc., and decide how cases should be arranged on pallets.

Determine the requirements for packaging and quality

Do production and machine trials to determine productivity and efficiency. Schedule line changes. Create inspection procedures and a quality assurance service. Establish a manufacturing line for updated or novel packaging techniques. Adjust packaging procedures and requirements.

Standard handling procedures for a retail pack in ambient storage Depalletizing, de-nesting, or container forming in a production line. Container inspection and transfer using a conveyor system include labeling, sealing, and filling Case sealing, coding, and casing stretching out and palletizing greenery storage

Delivery to warehouse

Transport via lorry to a regional retail distribution hub RDC archiving

RDC retailers' goods order picks and pallet break-bulk Mixed product load to RDC shipment on pallets or roll cages Delivered by vehicle to retail outlets, loaded pallets or roll cages Loads were temporarily transferred to the storage space at the rear of the shop. Merchandising display and trash should be loaded into store cabinets or shelves. The overall or total cost of the packaging system is determined by a variety of factors, including the use of materials, the effectiveness of the equipment and manufacturing lines, distribution movement, management, and people. These might contain a few of the operations.

A systems approach to packing may result in major advantages beyond merely cost, right? Functionally, savings may be achieved by, for example, raising packaging costs to improve pack performance and recovering savings in other areas like more productive plant operations or less expensive handling, storage, and transportation. A comprehensive systems approach to package optimization is what this is.

Products required

The complete product concept which includes both the product and its packaging—should be taken into account. The design and creation of suitable packaging requires a detailed knowledge of a product's properties, the inherent process by which it might degrade, its fragility in distribution, and any potential interactions with packaging materials, or compatibility. These traits relate to the product's physical, chemical, biochemical, and microbiological makeup. There is an ideal degree of packing, and the larger the product value, the higher the potential investment in packaging will be to prevent product damage or spoiling.

Distribution requirements and packaging preferences

It is essential to have a full grasp of the distribution system in order to create affordable packaging that protects the product to the right extent and is acceptable to users. The travel of the pack from the point of filling to the location of ultimate usage may be referred to as distribution. This term may in certain cases be broadened to include waste recovery and disposal as well as reuse of packaging. Climate, physical space, and biological space make up the three distribution environments. If these distribution conditions are not adequately taken into account, it will lead to poorly designed packages, higher prices, complaints from customers, and even customer avoidance.

The term "climactic environment" refers to an environment where a product may be harmed by gases, water, water vapor, light, dust, pressure, or the impacts of heat or cold. The effective use of technology will aid in preventing or postponing such harmful consequences during processing, distribution, and storage. During warehouse storage and distribution, which may entail one or more modes of transportation and a variety of handling processes, the product may sustain physical damage due to the physical environment. Packs are exposed to a variety of mechanical risks during these motions, including collisions, vibrations, compression, piercing, and puncturing. In general, the chance for human handling increases along with the potential of product damage from drops, the more break-bulk phases there are. The ideal through-distribution merchandising unit in a retail setting is a roll cage for cartons of fresh pasteurized milk, for instance.

The package interacts with bacteria and pests, such as rodents, birds, mites, and insects, in the biological environment. Understanding pests' survival requirements, sensory perceptions, power, capabilities, and limits is necessary. A grasp of microbiology and preservation techniques is required for microorganisms.

Additional aspects that must be taken into account when creating packaging for distribution include ease of handling, security, clear identification, and comfort in storage and display. These aspects are subject to trade-offs. These compromises affect both the product and the mechanism of distribution. Distributors require qualities that facilitate the distribution process since the packaging is the product in their eyes. Every modification to the criteria for particular goods' distribution has an impact on the pack's overall performance.

A cost-benefit trade-off study of the effectiveness of the three layers of packaging is necessary to determine the ideal design for a packaging system.

Main pack: in close proximity to the food or drink, such as a bottle and cap or a carton. A secondary or transit package, such as a tray or container made of corrugated fiberboard that has been shrink-wrapped, includes and organizes primary packs.

Tertiary packaging, such as a stretch-wrapped pallet, roll cage, etc. One example is the 12-can beer multi-pack constructed of sturdy unbleached board. Benefits include improved shelf display appearance, improved shelf display functionality, better print flexibility during production, increased primary package protection, easier consumer handling, tamper evidence, stack ability, and faster product scanning at the retail checkout, all of which can enhance store efficiency and/or customer service. In terms of a product's physical character, it is often supplied to the distribution function as a package or unit load rather than in its original form. Every debate relating to the interaction between the product and its packaging should take into account these two components. Protection against dirt, stains, leaks, paint flakes, grease, and oil as well as contaminated water Distributor protection against theft, tampering, and counterfeiting via distribution security Defending against contamination or material leaks from nearby packs essential parts in the trade-off with other distributional components while attempting to find the least expensive systems for a given level of service. For instance, individual two-pint milk cartons may be manufactured in collations of eight shrink-wrapped cartons, which are then placed onto pallets, stretch-wrapped, and transported on Lorries that can handle a certain number of pallet loads. The shrink-wrapped multi-packs may be ordered at the dairy depot and then delivered to small businesses. The individual milk cartons may be automatically placed at the dairy onto roll cages that are supplied to the retailer's merchandising cabinet display area without an intermediary break-bulk step in the case of big retail outlets.

CHAPTER 3

PACKAGING MATERIALS, MACHINERY AND PRODUCTION PROCESSES

[1]Dr. Shwetha. M.S, [2]Dr. N. Beem Kumar,
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]ms.shwetha@jainuniversity.ac.in

With the advent of new materials, technologies, and processes, packaging is continually evolving. The demand for better product quality, productivity, logistical services, environmental performance, and profitability may be the cause of these. But, a modification in the packaging's components could affect how well it is received by customers. The goal is a fitness for purpose approach to package design and development, which includes choosing the best materials, equipment, and manufacturing procedures to ensure the packaging system performs safely, sustainably, and affordably. For instance, take the case of a milk chocolate-covered wafer biscuit from a well-known brand and its innovative packaging. A printed and coated oriented polypropylene film flow-wrap with effective gas and moisture barrier qualities was used in lieu of the aluminum foil wrap and printed-paper label band. Packing materials and manufacturing operations saw significant cost reductions. Due to the strong tensile qualities of OPP, for instance, just one wrapping operation is now necessary instead of the two that were previously employed, and production rates are much greater. Also, the plastic wrapper is less likely to be harmed during distribution, and utilizing less material and energy resources has a positive environmental impact. Consumers who preferred the customary ritual of carefully unwrapping the foil pack and their ability to snap-off bars through the foil, however, were found to be somewhat resistant to this packaging modification, according to preliminary consumer research. The corporation used the freshness of the product and the offer of a free additional bar to market the new pack to the customer.

Even small changes in the packing material may have a negative impact on machine performance since packaging equipment is designed to operate with a certain kind of packaging material. Care must be taken while introducing new package materials and designs. Materials should be chosen after machine testing to ensure that the needed machine productivity and efficiency can be achieved. Novel designs can call for small or significant machine modifications, which would increase the direct cost of retooled components. Machine downtime, lengthy changeover periods, and increased operator training expenses may all have indirect costs. During distribution and storage, design changes in main packs may have a cascading impact on secondary packs and volume efficiencies, resulting in changes to height and diameter. For instance, a little modification to the profile of a container might affect how it is processed by machines during depalletizing, conveying, washing, filling, sealing, labeling, casing, and so on. To accommodate the new profile of containers, depalletizers will need to be modified. Resetting conveyor guide rails can be necessary. It may be necessary to replace or modify the star-wheel spacing screws on the filler and labeller's infeed and outfeed. New filler tubes and cups may be needed, and the fill head height may need to be adjusted. Sealer heads may need to be adjusted or modified as a result of a possible change in closure diameter. There could be a requirement for new labels, which would need adjustments and even new parts like label pads and pickers. If containers are moved, casing machines may need to be adjusted. To maximize pallet stability, a new container design and pallet stacking strategy could be necessary.

The direct expenses of modifying machines and designing new packages as well as the indirect costs of lower production until packaging lines stabilize may be quite high. It's crucial to include machine and material suppliers in the design process and communicate with line operations during implementation.

In order to accomplish a full variety of operating, filling, and sealing processes guided by computerized micro-electronic systems, packaging machinery has grown into a broad range of equipment and integrated systems. Technical aspects of packaging supplies, equipment, and manufacturing procedures. Packaging is crucial to a consumer's first perception of a product since it conveys attributes such as attractiveness, acceptance, and the image of a healthy diet. Food is accessible in a broad variety of product and pack combinations, such as freshly packed/prepared, refrigerated, frozen, ultra-heat treated aseptic, in-can sterilised, and dried items, each of which express its own processed visual impression to the customer.

Food's flavor, or taste and smell, is one of the most significant quality characteristics that influences human sensory experience. Processing and/or prolonged storage may severely reduce flavor. Color, texture, and nutritional value are further qualities that might be impacted. A food's quality is influenced by a variety of factors, including the distribution and storage circumstances it experiences over its anticipated shelf life as well as the quality of the raw materials, additives, processing techniques, and packaging. Both the quality of the food and the variety of packaged foods have significantly improved as a consequence of increased competition among food manufacturers, retailers, and packaging suppliers as well as quality checks of suppliers. A more discriminating customer and stricter temperature control in the cold chain have also contributed to these advances.

One definition of shelf life is the amount of time that a combination of food processing and packaging may retain acceptable eating quality under the specific circumstances at the point of sale and the mechanism by which the food is distributed in the containers. The idea of freshness may be promoted using shelf life as a marketing strategy. Products with an extended or lengthy shelf life provide the customer and merchant the time convenience of product usage in addition to a decreased risk of food loss. Important information about the goods and, often, how to utilize the pack and/or product is provided to the user via packaging. Facts like weight, volume, components, manufacturer information, nutritional value, and cooking and opening directions are among them. There are definitions for the many sorts of products in addition to regulatory requirements for the minimum size of letters and numerals. At the same time as consumers are looking for more specific product information, many labels are now available in many languages. Label legibility is a problem for those who are blind, and this is anticipated to become more crucial as the older population grows.

The customer need for convenience is a key factor in shaping food options and packaging innovation. Modern packaging offers a variety of convenience benefits. They include simple opening and disposal, handling and visibility of the product, resealing, microwave compatibility, extended shelf life, etc. A rapidly growing older population that is reasonably well-off is shown by demographic trends in the age profile of the UK and other advanced nations. They will want and anticipate greater pack functionality, such as simple pack opening, combined with a more demanding youthful customer.

The expense of providing and maintaining the retailer's shelf is substantial. Customers may become dissatisfied and defect to a competitor's shop where product availability is guaranteed if a store fails to have a sufficient range of products in stock or fails to replace stock in a timely manner, particularly for essential items like fresh milk. Modern distribution and packaging techniques enable customers to purchase food whenever and wherever they like. Recent years have seen a significant increase in consumer choice. For instance, in the UK, the typical supermarket's product lines increased from around 2000 to over 18 000 between the 1960s and the 1990s.

During the 1970s, concerns about food safety and health have grown significantly, as have the factors that influence what people eat. Consumers have been made aware of a number of concerns thanks to media coverage, including the usage of chemical additives and instances of food poisoning. Both purposeful tampering committed on purpose and production-related accidents resulted in these events. Unfortunately, a lot of customers are unaware of how crucial packaging is for maintaining food safety and quality. One result has been the quick adoption of tamper-evident closures for many pre-packaged meals in an effort to safeguard both the brand and the customer. Another effect has been to encourage customers to pay closer attention to the freshness/shelf life, minimal processing, and country of origin requirements. With their purchasing habits and the garbage they produce from packaging, consumers directly affect the environment. Packaging is a component of the product that consumers buy, and throughout time, its weight has decreased in relation to that of the product it contains. Yet, because of changing lifestyles and demographics, consumption patterns have resulted in higher amounts of packaging. Critical public attention is being focused on package volume rather than packaging weight. The quantity of plastic packaging trash entering the solid waste stream has also grown due to the trend toward more pre-packaged meals and food service packaging.

Environmental compatibility is one of the marketing strategies that manufacturers and merchants use. Unfortunately, consumers often lack clarity or struggle to define what ecologically friendly or responsible packaging is. Retailers and packaging businesses haven't been able to take advantage of this lack of clarity to acquire a competitive edge up until now. Customers want clear information and direction on which of their activities will have the most impact. The obligation for describing the purposes and advantages of its own packaging rests with each link in the packaging chain. While very little of this exact information reaches the final consumer, manufacturers often tout the benefits of their packaging to their clients, the product producers.

Many requirements and desires for the retail food industry

Modern fast-moving consumer goods commerce has evolved in part because of packaging, which in turn has sparked advancements in packaging to fulfill its needs. Large retail organizations' growth has been the most important development for the food packaging supply industry. These organizations have a significant impact on what is manufactured, how goods are displayed, and how they are delivered to retailers. Large retailers control a large portion of the packaged grocery business and have a significant impact on food producers and related packaging vendors. Thus, it is crucial for package providers to properly understand consumer demand and react to changes as soon as they occur. Also, because of the concentration of purchasing power at the retail level, producers may need to alter their packaging and distribution strategies in reaction to structural changes in the retailing industry.

Fast-moving consumer goods packaging has been referred to as a component of the food retail marketing mix, and it therefore has a significant impact on all the other marketing factors, such as product, price, promotion, and site. When discussing packaging in the context of a multi-brand food retail environment, retail logistics and brand competitiveness may be taken into account. The part packaging plays in the battle of the brands. In food marketing, packaging is crucial and is a big factor in whether a brand succeeds or just manages to hang on in a cutthroat market. Due to recent significant retail expansion, fierce industry rivalry, and an increasingly demanding and intelligent customer, packaging innovation and design are at the forefront of the battle between the brands of big retailers and product producers. Success for a certain product or brand depends on how quickly and creatively the product producer reacts to important trends. Using unique packaging is one of the best ways to react, and it has become a crucial element in a brand's success. In almost every product area, the retailers' own brand items are in fierce competition with the brands of the producers. Innovative packaging ideas that convey aesthetic and/or functional features may improve brand distinction.

While packaging and advertising are closely related, packaging is far more targeted than advertising since it gives consumers daily exposure to the product in their homes and on store shelves. Advertising in the media that is consistent with the pack's image and beautiful or unusual retail displays that showcase the pack design also help to promote the brand. The merchandising operation is typically under the control of the brand owner. Effective packaging is a critical component of promotional efforts, and there are several types of on-pack promotions available, including free additional products, money off, limited edition, new enhanced products, and foil packed for freshness. Bar code scanning data associated with the usage of retailer loyalty card programs has had a significant influence on merchants' purchasing and marketing choices. Their job is to better use this consumer behavior data for marketing initiatives and to increase customer loyalty to the store's brand. Retailers may also assess the success of new pack designs, on-pack promotions, and the sales attractiveness of new items using this data.

Packaging's function in various retail logistics. Physical distribution and in-store merchandising are both subject to strict restrictions. The store is open to packaging that lowers operating costs, boosts inventory turnover, converts to eye-catching merchandising displays, including pre-assembled or simple-to-assemble aisle displays, and meets logistical service criteria. For instance, integrated transportation and point-of-sale packaging reduces the need for potentially hazardous and risky cutting equipment by allowing for easier access to the goods and saving labor costs via quicker shelf loading. It also offers the chance for source reduction.

With its impact on pricing, the overall distribution cost has an impact on the total volume of demand. The cost of distribution and retail merchandising often accounts for a significant amount of the overall product cost for certain fast-moving commodity type items, such as pasteurized milk, accounting for up to 50% or more of the sales price. While the cost of packing supplies and containers does somewhat increase the cost, designing the ideal packaging system may drastically save costs across the retail supply chain. Several locations of production have relocated farther from the points of consumption as a consequence of the growth of global food supply chains, which often raises the cost of distribution.

The key to a retailer's competitive edge is controlling distribution costs via increased operational efficiency in the supply chain. Throughout the distribution channel, the store must maximize operational effectiveness. Delivering the required level of service to clients at the lowest possible cost is the aim of distribution. Finding the most economical logistical packing is becoming more and more important. Storage, inventory, transportation, management, and packaging are all components of distribution that have costs. For the merchant, storage, inventory, shipping, and labor at the shop are important expense categories, but for the food producer, it's shipping, storage, and packing.

The multiple retail food supply chain's effectiveness depends on strong coordination between retailers, food producers, and packaging suppliers. Moreover, it depends on precise order forecasting of expected demand. Enormous investments in information technology have made it possible to integrate the supply chain more closely, and electronic data exchange has made it possible to assure that merchandise is delivered to retailers exactly in time and is sold long before its expiration date. The primary use of the bar code is the electronic point of sale system at the retail checkout. It is a code that enables the industry-wide identification of retail product units via the use of a unique reference number. The identification of primary, secondary, and tertiary packing using bar codes has made distribution management and stock control more effective.

Packing is a way to guarantee that a product will be delivered to the customer safely, on time, in good condition, and at the lowest possible cost. Cost-effective protective packaging that supports excellent logistics performance is required for product delivery that is both timely and cost-effective. The aim is to arrive at the best protection level that will fulfill the customer's service needs at least expenditure. For cheap and easily replaced equipment, the projected damage rate for most businesses might be as high as 10% or more. The distributor and shop manager are also concerned about sanitation and hygiene. Making the most profitable use of shelf space is the dilemma facing the merchant. There is a need to have a variety of high-turnover products with excellent shelf lives or freshness available on the retail shelf. The necessity to reduce product inventories in the retail distribution channel often clashes with this. Thus, it is essential to have a well-integrated food packaging chain and excellent supply chain management. The effects of a wider selection of items, sometimes with shorter runs and lead times, include greater stock-holding costs, more frequent deliveries, or the development of just-in-time methods for packaging material suppliers and converters. A product manufacturer's ability to maintain a competitive advantage may be based on how fast and efficiently it reacts to the demands of the retailer for:

1. A very little stockpile
2. Rapid product change
3. Optimal fill level on the shelf
4. Effective handling techniques

Product reliability

As order lead times and promotional demands are shorter, the manufacturer's packaging process must adapt quickly to meet them with the least amount of downtime possible. Systems for packaging may need to be both dependable and adaptable, with the ability to modify the form, volume, design, and message with reasonable simplicity. Flexibility is equally crucial in situations when there is a need for regional marketing, unexpected seasonal demand, or if a product has failed in the market.

Systems for packaging that are modular or standardized increase the logistical value of goods. Using pallets, roll containers, and transport containers more effectively, as well as bundling packs in trays and outer cases to better suit supermarket shelves, is made possible by modular solutions. For the direct movement of the goods from truck to shelf display, outer packaging is being reduced. The resulting need for higher-quality primary packaging creates chances for innovation. Because of the potential for new distribution channels and the influence on industry structure, the shelf life problem and food packaging may play a crucial role in logistics. Any procedure that may lengthen shelf life, even by only one or two days, has the potential to effectively rationalize finished products stock levels and distribution.

Retailers are aiming to use packaging technologies that combine the needs of enhanced environmental performance with those of marketing and operational effectiveness. Examples include the use of returnable plastic trays, resealable containers, and corrugated boxes with higher recovered fiber contents that are collected for recycling. Significant advancements in just-in-time manufacturing and delivery, temperature-controlled delivery systems, and centralized warehouses managed by merchants all have the potential to reduce the quantity of packaging consumed.

Packaging's environmental performance

The political and public pressure on the environment, especially in connection to worries about the quantity of packaging and packaging waste, is a significant strategic problem for the food business. Politicians have been paying close attention to packaging and packaging waste for more than ten years as a consequence of public, media, and environmental pressure organizations. Just a minor portion of the overall solid waste stream is made up of packaging. In the UK, packaging waste accounts for around 6% of the 120 million tonnes of TSW that are dumped on non-agricultural land each year. The following is a list of the items that are available for purchase. The food industry's packaging sectors have worked hard for a long time to decrease the amount of logistical service needs that must be satisfied, for both business and environmental reasons. Accessibility, dependability, and reactivity of the product, such as effective customer response, just-in-time delivery, and modular packaging technologies for effective distribution, retail shelf space use, and simplicity of merchandising operations.

Norms and criteria for packaging

The best quality requirements must be defined as part of the packaging evaluation, and cost should not be an excuse for lowering these criteria. The ideal scenario for choosing a packaging provider is for the buying function to consult with packaging experts and come to a techno-commercial choice. More discriminating buyers increasingly want suppliers to have third-party recognized quality assurance programs. The ISO 9000-based quality management systems are the most common. Comprehensive quality management is a strategy that looks at how suppliers and consumers view quality in general. The emphasis has shifted from examining production outputs to keeping an eye on process variables. TQM may be seen as a source of competitive advantage, particularly when customers consider quality to be an issue.

The adoption of integrated computerized microelectronic control systems that can identify a variety of flaws and instantly expel reject packets has made it easier to ensure quality on manufacturing and packing lines. Automatic weather checkers, metal detectors, fill-level sensors, pack-leak detectors, label detectors, pack-dimension sensors, light-transmission sensors, and odor detectors are a few examples. Products sold under a retailer's own brand that are sent directly from the manufacturer to the retailer's centralized distribution system may have packing requirements that are specifically designed to withstand the demands of that retailer's system. Nonetheless, a national brand's packaging requirements could call for packaging that has to provide a greater level of protection owing to the vast range of storage conditions and distribution risks encountered throughout a pack's delivery via numerous retailers' distribution routes. As a result, the demands of the distribution system and the lack of control food makers have over it often result in requirements that increase costs and deplete resources. CERT OR or worthy. The strong drive to reduce packing, however, conflicts with this packaging strategy. There are several places where you may find the primary testing procedures for materials, like ISO, American Society for Testing and Materials, British Standards Institute, DIN, etc.

Food bio deterioration and methods of preservation

The breakdown of food by micro-biological entities, either directly or indirectly through products of their metabolism, is known as biodeterioration. In order to manufacture safe and healthful packaged meals, this article covers how the agents of food biodeterioration function and the commercial techniques available to combat these agents. Packaged food contamination may come from physical, chemical, and microbiological causes. The shelf life will depend on the kinds and amounts of microbiological sources available, as well as the barriers to growth provided by the preservation procedures. Microbiological sources may be found in foods before they are packaged or on the surfaces of packing materials. Chemical sources often come from enzymes that bacteria release to speed up the breakdown of dietary substrates into smaller molecules that may pass through their cell walls. Physical contamination is not covered in this chapter because, although it may introduce or transmit germs that might lead to food biodeterioration, it does not contribute to biodeterioration in and of itself.

The sorts of enzymes and bacteria that cause food to biodegrade are described in the first section. Together with the elements that may be employed to reduce their population, the growth conditions for microorganisms are described. Due to the differences in the ramifications of adding the organisms to food and in approaches to destroying them, bacteria and fungus need different sub-sections. The main techniques for preserving packaged goods are described in the second section. Traditional food preservation techniques including curing, salting, and sugaring were created before refrigeration became widely used. The invention of canning and freezing procedures to increase the amount of time that fruits and vegetables may be consumed were two significant commercial advancements in preservation. These techniques continue to play a significant role in the food preservation industry, with various combination treatments that are intended to inhibit microbial growth including heat processing.

Food processors work to create wholesome, tasty meals. The eating quality of the food up to the moment of consumption must be optimized, and pathogenic organisms must be eradicated or lowered to a safe level, as well as decreased and maintained at a low level. Certain foods are treated to attain commercial sterility, which successfully eradicates harmful microorganisms from the product and its packaging. The canning business gave rise to the concept of commercial sterility, whose main goals are to get rid of pathogens and reduce the number of organisms that might ruin food to an acceptable level under planned storage circumstances.

Food bio-deterioration agents

Enzymes

Complex globular proteins known as enzymes are present in all living things and serve as catalysts for accelerating biological processes. As enzymes are naturally found in food, they may catalyze processes that result in food biodeterioration. The food industry may leverage enzymes' positive effects to generate food items; for instance, hard cheese is often made using enzymes. To preserve and increase the shelf life of foods, it is often essential to use heat or chemicals to inactivate enzymes that are found in food and on packaging surfaces.

Due to their high enzyme content, fruits and vegetables provide many instances of the behavior of these food deterioration agents. Peroxidase, lipoxygenase, chlorophyllase, and catalase are some of the enzymes linked to the degradation of fruits and vegetables. Peroxidase is made up of a variety of enzymes with variable levels of heat resistance and is generally heat-resistant. Although some of these may be inactivated by brief heat treatments, others must be sterilized for several minutes in order to completely inactivate the peroxidase. Certain enzymes become more active when fruit ripens, which causes the tissue to soften as a result. Enzyme inhibitors are crucial for balancing the pace of metabolic responses in potatoes with respect to sugar buildup. This has economic significance since reducing sugars are undesirable when potatoes are being stored and condition before to processing because they might accelerate browning processes that result in discolouration. Invertase, the active enzyme, converts sucrose into reducing sugars, particularly at low temperatures. The inhibitor becomes active at higher temperatures and prevents the formation of reducing sugars.

Enzymic browning, which happens when a fruit or vegetable's surface is chopped or damaged and exposed to air, is another issue. This is caused by polyphenoloxidase, which converts phenolic components to indole quinone polymers when air is present. There are several ways to stop this kind of browning since these responses are so unfavorable. Examples include submerging food in brine to prevent oxygen from coming into touch with it or using acids like citric, malic, or phosphoric to inactivate the enzyme. Packaging the fruit in an environment that excludes air may lessen the intensity of the browning reactions but might lead to quality concerns and does not offer a feasible solution.

When food is ruined by microorganisms, enzymes are also produced, and they often cause the texture to change. On the other hand, certain bacterial species produce heat-s amylases. The bulk of the microorganisms that release enzymes are molds. The amylase enzymes break down starches, particularly naturally occurring starches, as the macro-molecular starch granules are broken down into their component sugars, reducing the viscosity of the meal. Mold is a particular concern for packaged products since many species constantly produce spores as part of their reproductive cycle. Spores are easily carried in the air and may infect the inside surfaces of exposed containers. There may be more intricate processes involved, such as the softening of fruits that have been canned due to Rhizopus species, which creates heat-stable pectolytic enzymes that attack the pectins in the fruit. Mucor piriformis and Rhizopus species also contribute to the textural disintegration in sulphite-treated strawberries because they produce homologous enzymes. The breakdown in texture of canned items has been attributed to the Byssochlamys species, particularly the strawberries in which it is often found. This heat-resistant mold must be eliminated by temperatures exceeding 90°C for many minutes. When enzymes are not completely inactivated, the storage life of packed items is often decreased. When it comes to canned food, this is seldom an issue, but it is something to keep in mind when it comes to frozen fruits and vegetables that have just undergone a blanching process before being frozen. As the purpose of blanching is to inactivate the majority of enzymes without significantly thermally damaging the food, it uses low temperatures and short heating times. The often observed restored activity in thawed food following frozen storage is caused by enzyme regeneration.

Microorganisms

Microorganisms are any little, living thing that cannot be seen with the naked eye. Wherever you look, you may find them—in the land, the water, the air, the plants, and the animals. It's possible that microbes are essential to the decomposition of organic substances. Food preservation techniques aim to stop the organic matter from decomposing. The most popular technique for eliminating or reducing the amount of germs found in meals and on the surfaces of packing materials is temperature regulation. The optimal temperature range for the development of these bacteria is determined using five kinds of temperature-sensitive microorganisms.

Psychrotrophic, which has the ability to reproduce under cold storage conditions, sometimes as low as 4C. They are the most easily destroyed by heat since they have adapted to live in severe cold. Psychrophilic, which need a temperature of 20°C for optimal development. Mesophilic organisms, whose ideal growth temperature ranges from 20 to 44 C. When it comes to packaged meals, these are the biggest issues. Thermophilic organisms, whose ideal growth temperature ranges from 45 to 60 °C. Generally speaking, these organisms only pose a risk if packaged goods are made or kept in temperate climes. Thermoduric cannot reproduce at temperatures over 70°C but may live there.

Bacteria are single-celled creatures that typically reproduce through binary fission, or dividing into two cells after a growth phase. One bacterium may split into two through fission if conditions are favorable for reproduction, and within 11 hours, there may be more than 10 million cells. At this stage, the food has obvious organoleptic deterioration owing to the formation of bad flavors, disagreeable odors, slime, or it may cause the release of toxins. The four phases of bacterial growth are as follows:

Lag phase, which may last for many hours as the bacteria adjust to their surroundings; sLog phase, during which reproduction begins to take place logarithmically after a short while. During this time, the conditions are optimal for development; the bacteria's reproductive rate is canceled out by its mortality rate during this stationary period; when food reserves are depleted or the amount of hazardous metabolites in the environment is high, bacteria enter a period known as mortality or decline during which they progressively stop reproducing. Bacteria may be distinguished most easily by their outward appearance, which generally takes the forms of spheres, rods, and spirals. Cocci come in a variety of forms, including pairs of diplococci, clusters of staphylococci, and chains of streptococci. Most bacilli form chains. Bacilli may range in length from 2 to 10 m, whereas cocci can vary in size between 0.4 and 1.5 m. Flagella, which resemble hairs in appearance, are used by certain cocci and many bacilli to move around in their liquid habitat. The most popular technique for detecting bacteria is known as Gram dyeing and was developed by the Danish bacteriologist Gram. According to their Gram stain features, bacteria are categorized into two primary groups: red, Gram negative, and blue, Gram positive.

CHAPTER 4

TYPICAL GROWTH CURVE FOR A BACTERIUM

[1]Dr. Amar Shankar, [2]Dr. Benaka Prasad S B,
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Chemistry, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.amar@jainuniversity.ac.in

For growth, bacteria need lipids, proteins, water, and carbohydrates. To support and catalyze metabolism, little amounts of vitamins and trace minerals are also required. For nutrients to be transported across the cytoplasmic cell membrane, they must be readily accessible in soluble form. Big and complex organic compounds must first be disassembled into smaller ones in order to get past the membrane. This is accomplished by the bacteria releasing enzymes into the nearby food, which help break down complicated chemicals into forms the organism can use. Several Bacillus species, including subtilis, amyloliquefaciens, and licheniformis, are examples of this because they secrete amylase, which converts complex carbohydrates into simple sugars that can be absorbed via cell membranes.

Water is necessary for bacterial development because it makes it easier for tiny molecules to get past the bacterial cell's outer cytoplasmic membrane through osmotic pressure gradients. More water must be supplied for bacteria than for yeasts or molds. Their growth is strong at 20% accessible water, but it is constrained at 10%, and there is no bacterial growth at 5%. The quantity of free water in a meal is measured as available water, which eliminates moisture that is bonded and inaccessible to microorganisms. The usual aw values for various foods are shown in 2.1. The equilibrium relative humidity is defined as the ratio of the vapour pressure of food to that of water, and the majority of bacteria cannot grow below an Aw of 0.91-0.94. ERH is determined as a percentage by multiplying aw by 100. A meal with an Aw of 0.90 thus has an ERH of 90%. The topic of drying techniques and water activity control is covered in Section 2.3.3.

All bacteria need an oxygen source to oxidize their food, which is necessary for the production of energy and growth. Some bacteria get their oxygen from the air directly, whereas others get it through the food they eat. When exposed to airborne oxygen, the latter often succumb to their injuries. Certain bacteria have the ability to be facultatively anaerobic, which means they can both grow and take oxygen from the air when it's there. Changing the environment above a packed product may help stop bacterial development; this method is often used in conjunction with refrigerated storage to provide another barrier to growth. As a result, foods may be produced with little to no heat processing and yet have a long shelf life. As light energy is not used by cells to synthesize food, it is not a prerequisite for bacterial development. Instead, the UV component of light damages bacteria by causing chemical alterations in the proteins that make up the cell walls. Bacteria like to flourish in environments without light. UV radiation is used to sterilize bottled water, when the restriction of transparency is not an issue, to achieve this result.

A protective spore may be formed by certain bacterial species if the environment becomes unfavorable to their capacity to develop. Extreme temperature ranges, the existence of unfavorable chemical environments, a lack of readily accessible moisture, and low nutrition concentrations are a few examples of circumstances that might lead to spore development. The vegetative portion of the cell dies during spore production and will only regenerate if the environmental circumstances are favorable. Because spores do not metabolize, they may remain dormant for years in environments where bacteria cannot thrive. Due to the frequent need to eliminate both bacterial cells and spores that gather on the surface of exposed packaging, this poses a difficulty for the food processor. Spores must be destroyed under more extreme heat or disinfectant conditions than vegetative bacterial cells must be. Due to the bacteria's quick development, they may sometimes become resistant to the harmful circumstances. Due to the spore's resistance and the bacteria's lethal toxin, Clostridium botulinum is a spore former that raises concerns in the heat-processed food industry. If there is no oxygen present and the pH is more than 4.5, C. botulinum spores will begin to germinate. Any sterilizing procedures used to kill it will also kill the other less heat-resistant bacteria since it is the most heat-resistant and deadly pathogen. While constructing a packing and processing line, many microorganisms must be taken into account. Toxin-producing microorganisms such C. botulinum, Listeria monocytogenes, Salmonella, Escherichia coli, Staphylococcus aureus, Bacillus cereus, and Camplylobacter are of particular importance from a public health standpoint. To obtain the state of commercial sterility for the packaged food, these may be managed by using sterilizing solutions and/or heat. C. botulinum, which creates a toxin that affects the neurological system, is the most deadly of them. The industry has taken steps to avoid this organism's presence in food and is well aware of the hazards it poses.

Only in anaerobic environments with readily accessible moisture, nutrients, and a pH of more than 4.5 can C. botulinum spores develop. Items with a pH of 4.5 or above are sometimes referred to as low acid foods, whereas those with a pH of 4.5 or below are high acid meals. This crucial pH limit plays a significant role in determining whether heat-preserved foods are pasteurized or sterilised. The very moderate heat treatment used in pasteurization methods has less of an impact on product quality than sterilization techniques that use heat. It is crucial to note that the following information is based on information from the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Foods must often be acidified before thermal treatment for pasteurization. Go to Adam and Dickinson's study for information on the pH levels of different items.

Nevertheless, there are psychotrophic forms of C. botulinum that can develop at low temperatures and are increasingly causing concern in foods. Most strains of C. botulinum are blocked from growing at refrigerator temperatures. This is a problem with sous-vide and vacuum-packed meals since they only undergo a light heating process and largely depend on careful cold temperature management to avoid out-growth. Another bacteria that thrives at low temperatures is listeria, but thankfully, it is destroyed by moderate temperatures. Salmonella and E. coli may also be reduced by six logs using the same procedure, which is 70°C for two minutes. Not all bacteria cause food deterioration or are harmful. To increase the shelf life of certain foods, bacteria have been utilized to good success in the fermentation and preservation processes. The intentional introduction of lactic acid bacteria for the fermentation of milk to generate yoghurts is one example that has been used for many years. Lactic acid bacteria are facultatively anaerobic and may be either bacilli or cocci. The milk sugar lactose, which is transformed to lactic acid during fermentation, serves as their energy supply throughout growth. As a consequence, the acidity level rises until the yoghurt reaches a set pH level and is ready to be packed. When the fermentation is finished, the cells of lactic acid bacteria may be destroyed by heating to 70°C. Since they contain live lactobacilli, which may have advantageous effects on the human digestive system more information about fermentation techniques of preservation, many varieties of yoghurt are, nevertheless, touted as having extra health benefits.

Fungi

A collection of microorganisms known as fungi may be found in nature on plants, animals, and people. Fungi species differ greatly in terms of structure and reproductive strategy. Fungi may be single-celled, spherical or oval creatures or multicellular formations that resemble threads. As mold grows on foods like cheese and bread, for example, the threads may connect to create a visible network that can be seen with the unaided eye. The two main categories of fungi are yeasts and moulds.

Yeasts are spherical, elliptical, or cylindrical single-cell creatures. Brewer's yeast, Saccharomyces cerevisiae, has a diameter on the order of 2-8 m and a length of 3-15 m. The size of yeast cells varies significantly. Some yeast cells from different species may reach up to 100 m in size. While alternative forms of reproduction are possible, the usual mode of reproduction for yeast cells is budding, which is an asexual process. A tiny bud forms on the cell wall of the parent cell during budding, and the cytoplasm of the parent and offspring are shared until the bud is separated from the parent cell by a double wall. While it is possible for the young cell to stay linked to its parent as the latter continues to create new buds, this is not usually the case. The newly formed cell may also develop additional buds on its own. Large groups of cells may get connected to one another as a consequence. Certain yeasts have the ability to produce spores, however these are a natural component of the reproductive cycle, unlike bacterial spores, which are produced as a method of surviving harsh environments. As a result, killing yeast spores in food or on packing surfaces using moderate heat or sterilizing agents is quite simple.

Molds are a diverse group of fungus with many multi-celled threadlike cells. Moulds use lengthy threads called hyphae to adhere to their meal, or substrate. They are the mold's vegetative portion and they emerge directly from the substrate. Molds may reproduce sexually or asexually, much as yeasts can. Many spores are produced during reproduction, which often occurs asexually. While it's not always the case, sexual reproduction often happens in reaction to changing environmental circumstances. Spores generated by sexual reproduction may lay latent for a while and are more tolerant of harsh environments than bacterial spores. Mould spores are one of the main causes of exposed packing materials being contaminated. This is due to the fact that the spores are very tiny and light, generated in large quantities, and intended to be transported by air to new locations. Food contamination that occurs after processing often results from molds that were introduced to the packaging as mold spores. For instance, when gooseberry jam was hot-filled into glass jars and then sealed without heating the closures, fungal growth appeared on the jam's headspace surface. A pasteurization procedure, jar inversion right after sealing, steam treatment of closures, or another measure would have avoided spoiling.

Penicillin, one of the most crucial medications for treating bacterial infections, is made from the Penicillium mold. A large portion of the green mold observed in nature is produced by spore-forming hyphae, which have the appearance of tiny green bushes. Powerful lipases and proteases are produced by the Penicillium family of molds, and these enzymes play a crucial role in the maturation of Camembert and blue cheeses. Oospora lactis is another fungus that grows on the surfaces of cultured milk and has traits similar to both yeasts and moulds. Soft cheeses are ripened with this bacterium.

Mold and yeast may develop in environments that are similar to those that bacteria do. Bread is susceptible to mold deterioration but not to bacteria that cannot proliferate, since they can live at lower accessible water levels. Moreover, fungi may develop in a variety of commercial jams and marmalades because they are more osmotically resistant than bacteria. The heat treatment done to the packed food, normally in the order of 85°C for 5 min, will destroy any fungi present on packaging surfaces and in food, but once the jar is opened, airborne contamination from mould spores may happen. The hairy growth colonies are ugly but do not pose a threat to the public's health since the moulds that thrive in high sugar environments do not produce poisons.

Molds can develop between pH 2.0 and 8.5, whereas yeasts can thrive between pH 3.0 and 7.5. Both yeasts and moulds are more tolerant to high acidity levels. The pH range of 4.5 to 5.0 appears to be ideal for the development of fungus. While spores of Alicyclobacillus strains have been shown to demonstrate exceptional acid and heat resistance, few bacteria can survive these low pH conditions. The pH of fruit juices may drop as low as 3.0, and these bacteria, known as acido-thermophiles, have led to spoiling issues.

Ascospores from molds like Byssochlamys fulva are an exception to the rule that fungi are less resistant of high temperatures than bacteria. These ascospores would need to be heated for a long time at a temperature over 90°C in order to make a commercially sterile meal in which they are the target organism. Strawberries are often used as a source of B. fulva. Cells of yeast or mold are often destroyed in under 5–10 minutes of heating at 60 °C. The major reason for a spike in outbreaks of food rotting during the summer is that fungus may thrive best between 20 and 30 degrees Celsius. Molds are nearly entirely aerobic, while yeast cells are facultatively anaerobic. Yeast cells convert sugar to alcohol and water when oxygen isn't present, but they convert it to carbon dioxide and water when oxygen is present.

Biodegradation that is not enzymatic

Non-enzymic browning is another form of biodeterioration that is important to note. The interaction between the components of sugar and amine-type compounds in food has a significant role in the formation of off-flavors and gradual browning. Dehydrated foods, particularly dried vegetables and potatoes, concentrated and dried fruit juices, and wine are examples of foods whose quality degrades in this way. After the French scientist who first studied the interaction of sugars and amines in 1912, these intricate chemical processes are known as Maillard reactions. In essence, the free amino groups of amino acids react with the aldehyde groupings of reducing sugars to create furfuraldehyde, pyruvaldehyde, acetol, diacetyl, hydroxydiacetyl, and other sugar-degradation compounds. These compounds then react with amines to create macromolecules that resemble melanoides. Despite much study on the matter, sulphuric acid and sulphites remain the sole effective means of preventing these reactions. The quantity of sulphur dioxide that is permitted in food items is rigorously regulated by law as well as by how much can be tolerated before the flavor becomes intolerable. Dried goods are sulfurized either immediately after or during the blanching process. The antibacterial protection that these compounds are employed for in other applications is not involved in the usage of sulphites for this purpose. It is important to highlight that any fruit or vegetable intended for canning must undergo extremely strict monitoring throughout the sulphite treatment process to prevent the possibility of severe rapid interior de-tinning.

Techniques for preserving food

The goal of food preservation is to increase food shelf life. Most of the time, the development of microorganisms that cause spoiling or illness is what restricts how long a product can be preserved, hence the main focus of most preservation procedures is to slow or stop this growth. Other elements that affect shelf life, such as the activity of naturally occurring enzymes inside the food or natural chemical interactions between its components, must also be taken into account.

Food preservation techniques come in a variety of forms, and it is usual practice to combine them in order to lessen the impact of each technique alone. A term for this is obstacle technology. The most important food preservation techniques are covered in the sections that follow. Due to the synergistic effects of combining strategies, it may be difficult to gauge the significance of each approach separately. For instance, by decreasing the pH of peach syrup by acidification with citric acid, the more heat-resistant bacterial flora is screened out, which reduces the need for pasteurization and, as a result, the influence of heating on the texture of the fruit.

A high degree

The main culprits for unfavorable food changes are microorganisms and enzymes. Both are sensitive to heat, thus using the right heating regimens may limit, stop, or even eliminate microbial and enzymatic activity. The kind of food, related enzymes, quantity and types of microorganisms, storage conditions for the processed food, and other preservation methods will all affect how much heat processing is necessary to create a product with enough stability.

It is possible to break down the production of a heat-preserved packaged food into two basic steps: heating the food to reduce the numbers of pathogenic and spoilage organisms that are capable of growing under the intended storage conditions, and sealing the food within a hermetic package to prevent re-infection. Although other preservation techniques, such aseptic, cook-chill, and cook-freeze, heat the food before dispensing it into its packaging, conventional canning seals the food in its package before applying heat to the packed food product.

Blanching

Blanching is a technique for inactivating enzymes that is often used just before other thermal preservation techniques that use either high temperatures or low temperatures. While blanching is not intended to minimize the microbial population on food surfaces, it will nonetheless result in fewer yeasts, molds, and other bacteria, as well as other species with reduced heat tolerance. Without the blanching phase, chemical breakdown during storage would significantly shorten the shelf life of, say, frozen vegetables. At the storage temperatures employed in commercial and residential usage, freezing does not completely remove reactions, but it does slow down those that depend on ionic transport. Food spoiling chemical reactions may happen, although slowly, if enzymes were present in foods throughout their frozen storage life. Enzyme inactivation will stop these processes from happening and increase shelf life. The blanching stage is comparable in thermal processing of fruits and vegetables, but its goal is to stop additional enzymatic breakdown of the food if delays occur before processing the item. Another benefit of this procedure is that some of the air contained inside the cellular substance is eliminated, which lessens the fruit's or vegetable's propensity to float.

The use of heat

The phrase "can retorting" or "processing," which refers to a variety of thermal techniques where food is heated within the pack to produce a commercially sterile packaged product, is still frequently employed in the food business. Retorts, which are essentially batch-type or continuous hot water and/or steam-heated pressure cookers, are used to heat the food. The main idea behind food canning is heating food in a hermetically sealed container to the point where it is commercially sterile at room temperature, or in other words, where no microbial growth can take place in the food under typical storage conditions at room temperature until the package is opened. When the package is opened, the benefits of canning are gone, the food must be treated as perishable, and the shelf life of the food depends on the kind of food being consumed. Tinplate, glass, plastic pots, trays, bottles and pouches, aluminum cans, and other packaging materials are used in the canning process. The majority of canned goods are sterilized, but a developing trend involves adding barriers to microbial development that enable the processor to utilize a gentler heat treatment known as pasteurization.

C. botulinum is the most heat-resistant pathogen that may survive the canning of low-acid foods. In unfavorable circumstances, this bacteria may develop heat-resistant spores that can germinate in the absence of oxygen and create a toxin that is very strong and causes the deadly illness known as botulism, which can result in death within seven days. If no other effective barrier to its development is present, all canning methods target this bacterium since the canning operation creates anaerobic conditions.

In actuality, a single spore must have a one in a million chance of surviving in a can of low-acid product due to the heat treatment used. This is known as a botulinum cook, and the recommended procedure is F03, which is 3 min equivalent at 121.1 C. It is crucial to recognize that numerous food-related elements may either allow for less processing to be used or need more processing to be done. For instance, the latter might be influenced by the desired product texture, the consistency of the product formulation, the control of the retort operation, and, in circumstances where thermophilic organisms are a problem, the location of the packed food's distribution and sale. Since they won't germinate from their spore forms throughout the shelf life, thermophilic organisms cannot be significantly reduced by the F03 botulinum cook. Nevertheless, if the surrounding environment is likely to support the development of thermophilic organisms, a more rigorous treatment must be used, lasting up to 15-20 min at 121.1°C. Some product kinds with high initial counts in the raw components are more susceptible to thermophilic spoiling risk. While F03 is thought to be the absolute minimum, most canned goods are heated to considerably higher temperatures in order to provide a high degree of safety against potential deterioration brought on by any uncertainty about variances in product and/or thermal process control.

The filled aluminum or tinplate cans are hermetically sealed, with the can ends secured by a double seaming procedure, and the cans are heated in a batch retort during the typical food canning process. In order to prevent any portion of the food from being under-processed, care must be taken to ensure that the heat reaches the can's slowest heating point. Heating is often accomplished by steam or water. At the same time, it is preferable to avoid overcooking the dish since doing so would lower the food's quality. In comparison to alternative packaging media, a metal can provides the prospect of rapid production rates as well as excellent pack size flexibility. Moreover, cans' high compression strength allows them to endure physical abuse during processing and distribution. Due to the possibility of high pallet stacking, the metal can delivers a high level of pack integrity dependability across the distribution chain as well as excellent space efficiency in warehouse storage. The thin-walled metal container is an excellent conductor of thermal energy from the heating and to the cooling medium, in contrast to thicker plastic and glass packs that allow slower heat transfer.

It is essential that there be no post-process contamination via the packaging seams or seals since the food must be chilled after cooking. Because of the importance of maintaining seal integrity, there are tight guidelines for container handling. The containers should not be handled when wet as this might result in contamination, with the water serving as a conduit for any microbes present. Cooling water must be of excellent quality microbiologically. Evidence suggests that due to the expansion of the metal in the twin seams, cans do not form a hermetic seal when they are heated. In order to lower the possibility of microbiological contamination entering the container during the post-process, good cannery practice eliminates human handling of hot and wet cans.

Either continuous cooker-coolers or batch retorts may be used for thermal processing. Several heating medium, such as condensing steam, steam and air mixes, water immersion, or water droplets that may be sprayed over the packs, are used in batch retorts. This gives you a lot of option to switch around the meal or packaging. By agitating the containers end over end, the retaining baskets or crates within the retort may be rotated to cause mixing inside the food and speed up heat transmission to the thermal center of the pack. Depending on the strength of the pack and the convective nature of the food within, typical rotation rates may range from 2 to 30 rpm. A plastic bag carrying rice, for instance, may be rotated gently to prevent harm to the fragile pack and its contents. Yet, the rotation is enough to cut the process durations so much that financial improvements and quantifiable quality benefits are realized. There are two kinds of continuous cooker-coolers: hydrostatic and reel and spiral. Both make advantage of the metal can's capacity to roll along a limited route. The cans are made to spin around their axes by a reel and spiral unit at the bottom third of a helical route, where gravity keeps the cans in touch with the metal can guides.

This is referred to as fast axial rotation, because it quickly penetrates heat into the can's center. Soups, sauces and meals that may move inside the can are prepared in reel and spiral cooker-coolers. Compared to stationary retort static heating, considerable savings in process times may be realized by adopting FAR. The most effective way to sterilise or pasteurize packaged goods with a liquid-to-solid ratio that enables heat from the circulating medium to permeate more quickly and uniformly to the thermal core is often a reel and spiral device. According to some claims, the quality of agitated goods is often far better than that of items prepared using the static approach. Instead of using such extreme rotation, a hydrostatic cooker-cooler transports the cans on carrier bars through a series of chambers where they are pre-heated to 80–90°C, sterilized to 120–130°C, pre-cooled to 80–90°C, and then chilled below 40°C. When the cans transition between the chambers, the only rotation is a half-turn. For thicker meals, such as solid petfoods and meat items, when rotating forces cannot be applied, hydrostats are used. While thermally processed foods are often packaged in metal cans or trays, alternative media such as glass bottles or jars, plastic cans, bowls, pots, or trays, and flexible pouches can also be filled and processed in a similar manner.

They are becoming more and more popular as a result of the advantages they provide to consumers, such as the potential for microwave and/or light transparency and handling features. Compared to metal containers, each of these packs demands more attention when handled both during and after the procedure. When heating and cooling, air overpressure larger than that produced primarily by water vapour pressure inside the pack is required. This keeps plastic packs from losing their form and size and keeps the lids on glass jars from being driven off. Flexible packs would expand in the absence of air overpressure, putting undue strain on the seals and raising the likelihood of packs exploding. One of the crucial control points in a thermal process is the overpressure profile, which has to be determined by seeing or measuring pack deflection within the retort. The original pack form is preserved by adjusting the retort pressure. If this is not set up properly, there is a potential that the sealing region may sustain damage that is not immediately apparent but is significant enough to allow a microbe to enter the pack. A bacteria can fit through a hole that is just a few microns wide. The external pressure functions as a driving force moving water from outside of the sealing area to within the pack since most packs are closed to generate an internal vacuum, which helps minimize oxidative degradation of the food and decrease internal corrosion. The significant pressure variations in the retort that emerge when steam condenses to leave a vacuum during the first few minutes of cooling are also a reason for worry. The retort has to be filled with sterile air to combat this. Thought to occur often at the beginning of cooling, this danger has been reduced by the use of contemporary computer-controlled retorts.

Continuous thermal processing

Food preservation using in-line continuous heat processing is referred to as UHT. In the aseptic packaging procedure, UHT treatment is done first, and then the product is packed in a sterile container in a sterile setting. The main distinction is that, in this case, the aseptic form, fill, and seal procedure is used, in which the food and packaging are sterilised separately before the package is filled and sealed in a sterile environment. In a continuous process, the liquid food or beverage is pasteurized or sterilized as it passes through a heat exchanger and is then put cold into the packaging. For liquid dishes like soups, fruit juices, milk, and other liquid dairy items, this approach is very suitable. Metal cans, plastic pots and bottles, flexible packaging, and foil-laminated paperboard cartons have all been used in aseptic packing. The range of sui containers is wider than it is for foods that have undergone thermal processing since air overpressure is not necessary in this technique.

Plate packs are used for thin liquids, tubular heat exchangers are used for meals with a medium viscosity, and scraped surface heat exchangers are used for foods with a high viscosity that may include particles. The thermal process is supposed to only be provided inside a holding or residence section, which typically consists of a lengthy tube. This provides for wide safety margins since it does account for the high temperature periods at the conclusion of heating and the beginning of cooling. The holding tube outlet temperature and the residence duration derived from the observed flowrate are used to determine sterilization values. The utilization of high temperatures and short periods necessitates very accurate control of these parameters.

UHT processing has the potential to improve food quality since it may greatly lessen the issue of overcooking. In a UHT process, typical temperatures and holding periods are in the range of 140 ℃ for a brief period of time. Although the pace of cooking responses is less significant at these high temperatures, the rate of fatal death to C. botulinum spores is significant. The temperature sensitivity helps to explain this. This is assumed to be 10°C for C. botulinum spores, which indicates that the deadly impact multiplies by 10 for every 10°C increase in the food's temperature. Hence, it would only take 0.03 minutes at 141.1 C to reach the minimal botulinum level, as opposed to 3 minutes at 121.1 C. The step from 121.1 to 141.1C would result in less than a one-log change in the cooking criteria since several cooking processes, such browning, are defined by higher z-values, in the range of 25-33C. In practice, UHT permits very quick process times with no quality loss. This advantage is exploited in the creation of sterilised milk and cream that, if treated in the pack, would become too brown and develop off flavors, but UHT processing followed by aseptic filling may provide a more acceptable final product. In the case of fruit juice and fruit beverages, higher residual content of vitamin C, a heat-sensitive chemical, is a benefit in addition to better color and flavor retention.

A significant fraction of heat-processed meals are filled aseptically, which allows for the utilization of fast line speeds. Typically, reels of film are used to assemble the packages in the sterile filling environment. For instance, the majority of liquid meals and fruit juices/juice beverages are packaged in aseptic Tetra Brik Aseptic foil-laminated paperboard boxes. The liquid is first pasteurized or sterilized using a plate heat exchanger or tube exchanger, then the carton material is sterilized by utilizing a mixture of heat, hydrogen peroxide, and UV radiation. In the TBA system, sterile or pasteurized liquid is continuously poured into a tube made of sterile, unreeled carton material, and the liquid is heat-sealed before the carton is formed. The TBA method enables rapid production rates with a high degree of certainty about the integrity of the seal, and as there is often little headspace, it requires less packing. If required, a headspace may be created, for instance by dispersing nitrogen bubbles in chocolate milk before filling and sealing, allowing the food to be completely mixed by hand shaking the pack before eating. Nevertheless, the TBA technique has limitations on the kinds of meals that may be filled, virtually preventing aseptic filling for foods that include discrete particles that would prevent a successful seal from forming. Rexam's Combi-bloc aseptic carton technology, which includes forming, filling, and sealing flat ready-made carton units before filling the open-top carton, is one potential remedy. While the Combi-bloc method produces at a slower rate, one of its key benefits is the versatility of pack sizes. The fact that particles heat via conduction, which is slower than convection heating of a liquid component, and that a typical UHT procedure only lasts a few seconds is another disadvantage of UHT processing of meals containing particulates. The center of the particles cannot be sterilized in this amount of time, thus one approach is to reduce the temperature to lengthen the residence period, which may counteract the advantages of UHT processing. Another option is ohmic heating, which depends on the electrical conductivity of the particles.

Pasteurisation

Due to other elements that aid in food preservation, the primary goal of this heating regimen is to ensure commercial sterility. Depending on the kind of food, the types and quantities of microorganisms present, and the actual degree of heat process necessary for a good pasteurization, there may be a range of requirements. To inactivate heat-resistant enzymes, a prolonged pasteurization procedure could be necessary in certain circumstances. The procedure was initially made commercially available in the UK in the 1930s, when a 63°C for 30 min. treatment was used. Milk is the most often eaten pasteurized product in the country. Contemporary milk is pasteurized using a procedure that lasts 15 seconds at 72 degrees Celsius. Several various kinds of food, including pickled vegetables, jams, chilled ready meals, and fruit items, are produced using pasteurization extensively. Food may be pasteurized continuously or in a sealed container. In order to maintain their longer stability for the necessary amount of time, pasteurized foods often depend on additional preservation mechanisms as they are not sterile. While it's common to serve food chilled, certain meals contain enough salt, sugar, or acid in them to make them inedible at room temperature.

Cook-chilled foods often have shelf lives measured in weeks or months, and in situations where just chilling is the preservation element, they typically have much shorter shelf lives than heat-preserved packaged meals for ambient storage. The next sections go into further depth on the barriers to microbial development that enable pasteurization procedures to be used. Heat is often utilized in conjunction with several of these obstacles to offer commercially packaged foods that are sterile.

Temperature is low

Freezing

Food that has been frozen does not become sterile. Despite the fact that freezing may lower levels of specific vulnerable microbes, this does not significantly affect the food's overall microbiological quality. Nevertheless, all microbial activity ceases at commercial freezing temperatures, and the amount of time that food may be stored depends on other conditions. The presence of living microorganisms in a frozen meal will develop and reproduce after it has been defrosted, it is vital to remember. Enzymic activity may continue at freezing temperatures, although more slowly, and over time may change the food's organoleptic characteristics. The possible difficulties with enzyme activity will depend on the individual diet. For instance, after the pea pods are harvested, the sugar in them quickly turns into starch, producing an unsweet product if this is not stopped. Vegetable products are blanched before freezing to guarantee that enzymes are inactivated for this and similar reasons, and they are frozen within hours after being harvested. Blanching often entails heating to 90 to 95 C for a short period of time and then quickly freezing. The speed of freezing affects the food's quality. To avoid the creation of huge ice crystals that tend to negatively influence the texture of the food by compromising the cell integrity of fruits and vegetables or destroying the muscle proteins of meat, fish, and poultry, rapid freezing in blast freezers is preferred. In addition to enzymatic activity, there are several additional chemical and physical processes that might shorten the shelf life of frozen food. Examples include surface drying and lipid oxidation, both of which, depending on the product, could take months to occur. In order to minimize these undesired changes, the interaction between the food and its packaging is essential. Paper, plastic, and metal are just a few of the materials and styles used in the packaging of frozen meals. The requirements for packing materials are less strict for goods that have undergone heat processing and are kept at ambient temperatures. Since chemical reactions do not occur at substantial rates, migration of gases like oxygen through the packing material has less of an impact on the food, making the requirement for gas barrier materials less pressing. Moreover, there is no need for the containers to be commercially sterile, as in aseptic filling, since the meals are frozen solid, giving the pack additional stiffness.

More often than not, customer handling of frozen goods affects their storage life than the efficiency of the freezing operations. Most residential freezers run at temperatures substantially higher than those used for manufacturing and distribution. The food's outer structure is harmed by repeated freeze-thaw cycles, which also encourage chemical and physical degradation. A premium food that is engineered to have tiny ice crystals inside a complicated matrix is ice cream. Yet, as the meal is misused, the ice crystals enlarge and the smooth structure eventually disintegrates, giving way to a tougher, coarser-textured food with obvious ice crystals.

Cooling and freezing

Although cooling is a more generic phrase used to describe the decrease of a food's temperature, chilling may be defined as the process that reduces the food's temperature to a safe storage temperature of between 0 and 5C. Foods that have been chilled rather than frozen may possibly pose a bigger threat to public safety. Low temperatures slow down the pace of food degradation due to microorganisms and chemicals. With most processed chilled foods, it is the microbial growth that limits the shelf life; even the modest growth rates that occur under refrigerated settings will ultimately result in microbial levels that might harm the product or constitute a possible threat. Although infections, if present, may have the capacity to develop without changing the food in any obvious ways, this microbial growth may cause the food to decay. According to the UK's Food Protection Act of 1990, packaged chilled dairy, meat, egg, fish, and poultry goods must be distributed, kept, and sold at 5°C and have a use-by date stated on the label.

Generally speaking, a procedure of 70°C for 2 minutes is adequate, although the precise process may vary depending on the kind of food. Using growth inhibitors like pasteurization and freezing may extend shelf life by several days. The shelf life may be increased to 18 to 24 days or more using a more severe pasteurization regime, such as 90 degrees Celsius for 10 minutes. It is normal for a corporation to apply the same heat procedure to two distinct meals, although the reported shelf life of one may be 14 days while the other may allow 20 days. The actual duration relies on the food's propensity to sustain microbial growth. It's a good idea to have a backup plan in case anything goes wrong.

Several fresh fruits and vegetables may be kept fresher longer by being chilled. Low temperatures in this area slow down biochemical activities that go on after the food has been collected as well as the development of naturally existing microbes. Each fruit and vegetable, however, has a certain optimal storage temperature, and some are vulnerable to cold harm. For instance, keeping bananas below 12 C will cause the skin to become black. Just cooling many fresh fruits and vegetables to temperatures over 5 C.

There is a wider range of packaging for chilled goods than for other preservation methods. This is so that the shelf life of the food is not affected by interactions between the food and the packaging but rather by microbial development inside the food itself. In contrast to frozen or canned meals, which must remain protected for up to three years, the package only has to last a few days until the customer utilizes it. The barrier qualities for foods with a limited shelf life are thus less constrictive. A cold food package must be hygienic but not sterile, which creates novel packaging possibilities that are not possible with aseptic filling. While it is more typical for packs to just undergo a water wash or air blast, there are situations when partial sterilization of the open packs with sanitizing solutions is utilized to minimize the bacteria population. With chilled foods, there are exceptions to the rule of pack simplicity if obstacle techniques are used, such as when employing changed atmospheres or in-pack pasteurization. They are covered in depth in the parts that follow that are pertinent.

CHAPTER 5

DRYING AND WATER ACTIVITY CONTROL

[1]Dr. Shwetha. M.S, [2]Dr. Subhashini S,
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]ms.shwetha@jainuniversity.ac.in

Water is necessary for microbes to grow. One technique to slow or stop development is to reduce the quantity of water in a diet that is accessible to the microbe. So, dried foods and ingredients—such as dried herbs and spices—won't support microbial development and, as long as they're maintained in a dry environment, may be anticipated to have a long shelf life, perhaps even years. Several common foods are available in dried form, and as long as they stay dry, they will remain edible for a very long time. Breakfast cereals often have a short shelf life due to textural changes brought on by moisture leaking into the packing, which causes the food to soften and lose its crispness in the as For dry goods like pasta, fruit, and breakfast cereals, laminated paperboard with a plastic moisture barrier, such polyethylene, is a typical pack format. Nevertheless, other pack formats include moisture barrier bags and pouches. Dried foods may remain fresh for a number of years.

The majority of dried foods attain moisture levels that are low enough to halt chemical reactions, eliminating chemical degradation as a factor influencing shelf life. ERH is used to gauge a food's moisture content. Its sign, aw water activity, stands for the ratio of the vapour pressure of food to that of pure water. According to a previous section on microbial growth, the majority of bacteria cannot grow below an altitude of 0.91, yeasts stop developing at an altitude of 0.85, and molds stop growing at an altitude of 0.81. The optimal aw levels for dry foods are in the range of 0.3, which is far lower than the amount that encourages microbial development. The ability of the microorganism to create resistant spores in the allotted period when the moisture content is within growth limitations will likely determine if there is a lethal impact at such low aw levels. The conventional technique of sun drying will take more time since the food's moisture content is falling at a much slower pace, which may be adequate for spore generation. Quick drying procedures like spray drying may not provide this time to happen.

Foods that have been dried may be produced using a variety of drying techniques. The food and its intended usage will determine the technique and packing type to utilize. Any of the aforementioned techniques may get level down to around 0.3, which stops microbial and enzymatic degradation processes. The traditional use of sugar to create an osmotic pressure gradient to lower the levels of aw in meals. While certain foods, like jams and marmalades, may have relatively high water content, most of it is bound or tied by the sugar and pectin in the jam, making it unavailable to microorganisms. Traditional jams may thus be stored for many months without becoming bad. On the other hand, many low-sugar jams must be refrigerated after being opened since the sugar content is insufficient to stop microbial development. A pasteurization technique is used during production to kill any microorganisms in the jam and on the packaging, however once the container is opened, mold spores may become airborne contaminants. This is an excellent illustration of how customer demand for foods with changed properties has led to a product losing one of its key, original properties—long-term stability at ambient temperature. Foods that employ osmotic pressure to manage the aw levels are often packaged in screw-top glass jars and heat-sealed plastic pots. The primary need for the package design is a strong moisture barrier to prevent moisture infiltration throughout a prolonged shelf life of up to 18 months. For glass jars, the lid must also be re-sealable to allow an extra shelf life of several weeks after opening.

Synthetic preservation

A key technique for food preservation is the addition of certain chemicals to foods in order to prevent microbial development and chemical reactions. The greatest attention is undoubtedly given to antimicrobial chemicals, most of it unfairly negative. In the UK and EU, only a few number of preservatives are allowed to be used, and in many instances, there are restrictions on how much and in which foods they may be used. There are just a few food kinds for which certain preservatives are used. The two most often employed preservative kinds are sulphur dioxide and its derivatives, as well as sorbic and benzoic acids and their salts. A significant consumer-led movement is presently underway to minimize the number of foods that contain preservatives and the amount of preservatives that are actually utilized. This is a serious issue for the food sector since a decrease in preservative level requires the employment of either a different preservation method or a materially shorter shelf life. These two options could produce food that is either of real or perceived lower quality.

Antioxidants are frequently used in conjunction with preservatives to stop the chemical deterioration of foods, such as rancidity brought on by fat oxidation and browning of cut vegetables brought on by the formation of high molecular weight compounds due to the activity of the enzyme polyphenol oxidase. One of two methods may be used to add the preservative to the packaged food. The preservative is often mixed into the food before it is put into the packaging and sealed. This process is used to make soft drinks that need sorbate, benzoate, and metabisulphate salts to prevent microbial development after the packaging has been opened. Without the preservatives, mold and yeast would infiltrate the juice, flourish in the natural storage environment, and degrade it very rapidly. Because of this, several packs lack a re-close feature, such as single-shot beverage bottles. Before the therapeutic method is used, nitrite salts and/or nisin are added to certain meat products, such as canned ham and tongue. Their purpose is to prevent excessive heat deterioration of the meat and enable delivery of a reduced thermal procedure while maintaining product safety. As an alternative, the preservative may be added to the food by incorporating it into the packaging or adding it as a part of the packaging; this is known as active packaging. This is covered in further depth in 9. These packs are virtually exclusively used for items that can fetch higher retail prices since the costs of active packaging materials are much higher than those of traditional materials. Bacteriocins are a kind of preservation agent used in packaging. During the brief shelf life, the antimicrobial compounds slowly release to the food or the environment above the food and stop bacteria development. With active packaging, a growing industry with significant economic value, it is possible to extend shelf life by several days. Certain kinds of chemical preservation, as described below, are well-established, conventional procedures, in contrast to the relatively new active packaging techniques.

Curing

In its purest form, the term "curing" refers to keeping or preserving, and methods include sun drying, smoking, and dry salting. Nevertheless, the term "curing" currently often refers to the ancient method of chemically preserving food, mostly meat but sometimes fish and cheese, using a mixture of salt, nitrate, and nitrite. In order for the technique of preservation to work, the water that would normally be available for microbial development must be chemically or physically attached to the curing agent and not be accessible to the bacterium. For instance, salt does this by forming ionic connections between the sodium and chloride ions in the salt and the polarized hydrogen and hydroxide ions in the water. Although nitrite also has preservation properties and helps to the distinctive color of these dishes, salt has preservative and flavor benefits in cured meat products. Pork items that have been cured include bacon, ham, and gammon. There are several ways to cure meat. As an example, the traditional Wiltshire method for curing bacon includes injecting brine into the pig's carcass and submerging it in a solution that comprises 24-25% salt, 0.5% nitrate, and 0.1% nitrite. The high concentration of stored protein gives the curing brine, which is topped up in between batches and utilized from one batch to the next, its distinctive deep red color. Conventional cured foods like bacon, ham, and fish are often preserved refrigerated and shrink-wrapped in plastic film. Vacuum packing is widely used because it prolongs shelf life by slowing down oxidative degradation.

Pickling

While the word may sometimes be used to refer to salt preservation, this term most often relates to the preservation of foods in acid or vinegar. Yeasts and molds need far higher levels of acidity to prohibit development, while the majority of food-poisoning bacteria cease growing at pH levels below 4.5, the lowest level obtained during the pickling process. In the UK, a variety of vegetables are pickled in vinegar, including beets, gherkins, cucumbers, onions, cabbage, walnuts, and eggs. To preserve certain meals, the raw or cooked item is simply submerged in vinegar, while other foods need extra steps, including pasteurization, to create a tasty and secure final result. The following is a sample of the kind of work we do.

For pickled and low pH foods, conventional packaging includes glass jars with tinplate standard twist-on/off lug lids and totally interior lacquered tinplate cans. Pickle brines have a corrosive effect on the outside of tinplate cans, and in the case of glass jars, the rusting of tinplate cap lugs onto the glass thread may make it impossible to remove the cap. As a result, the package seal must not leak. Moreover, a lack of vacuum or inadequate vacuum levels in pickle bottles may encourage corrosion under the compound lining and internal lacquer coating of the lids, leading to leaking. During the last ten years, ambient shelf-stable low pH foods have become a significant growing market. The pH of many meals is lowered by adding naturally occurring acids like citric and lactic acid in order to prevent the growth of the deadly and extremely heat-resistant C. botulinum germ. Since the spores of this organism cannot germinate at pH values below 4.5, their presence in foods does not pose a problem. Glass is a common packing material for pasteurized foods that have high acid/low pH levels. High-quality meals may be produced by using barrier technologies like low pH and gentle heat, and glass has outstanding aesthetic qualities in addition to consumer appeal.

Smoking

This is yet another conventional food preservation technique that uses chemicals to maintain the food. Meat hanging on a fireplace or chimney to dry out is where the practice of meat smoking originated. This had a number of impacts: the meat was partly dried, which helped with preservation in and of itself; nevertheless, the polyphenol chemicals in the smoke had direct preservative and antioxidant properties; they also give the meal a distinctive flavor. The amount of drying, smoke deposition, and cooking are often adjusted individually in current smoking procedures. An example of a dish where brining is combined with smoking to produce a finished product with a prolonged shelf life under refrigerated circumstances is smoked salmon. The barrier against microbial development is provided by three preservation techniques. Foods that have been smoked are often packaged in transparent shrink-wrapped plastic film that keeps air out of the container and acts as an odor barrier to preserve the product's flavor. In order to increase production speeds and exert better control over the penetration of flavors and preservative chemicals into the product, many contemporary producers now dip foods into synthetic smoke solutions. Moreover, it limits the amount of harmful poly-aromatic hydrocarbons that are present. As opposed to the traditional smoking approach, liquid smoke does not dry up the food, and when paired with the altered chemical profile that is deposited on the food, it is likely to produce a new microbial community on the food's surface. Products that are liquid-smoked may degrade differently from those that are conventionally smoked.

Fermentation

Regarding the calorific content of food ingested by a person, which may be as high as 30%, fermentation is one of the most significant means of preservation. Preferred bacteria are allowed or encouraged to flourish in fermented foods in order to create a tasty, secure, and reasonably priced product. These microbes may also impede other unfavorable chemical changes. They may stop or slow the development of other undesirable spoilage or pathogenic organisms. In the food business, there are three basic forms of fermentation: bacterial fermentation of carbohydrates, yeast fermentation of carbohydrates to ethanol, and bacterial fermentation of ethanol to acetic acid. Lactose fermentation to lactic acid occurs in many fermented milk products. The fermentation process often produces compounds that function as chemical preservatives. Before adding the bacterial cultures, the milk is first pasteurized in the yoghurt-making process to lower the natural microbial population and eliminate diseases. Lactic acid is created during fermentation, which causes the pH to decrease to between 4.0 and 4.3. The yoghurt is ready to be cold-filled into heat-sealed plastic pots at these pH values since there aren't many harmful bacteria that can thrive there. According to the form-fill-seal concept, which involves presenting the packaging to the filler in two reels and forming the pots there, many yoghurt filling systems work on this basis. It is not necessary for a yogurt operation to be aseptic, but this kind of packaging equipment might be simply modified to function in an aseptic environment. Yogurts with extended ambient shelf lives are packed in this manner.

Changing the climate

This method is being used more often to increase the shelf life of different bakery goods, snack foods, and other dry foods as well as fresh items including meat, fish, and cut fruit. A gas composition is used to replace the air in a package in order to prevent microbial development and food degradation. For instance, shredded cheddar cheese for retail sales is stored in a 30% carbon dioxide, 70% nitrogen environment. The majority of the time, microbial development will be stopped, although with dried foods, rancidity and other chemical changes may start later. The sort of food being packed and the biological process being managed will determine exactly what gas is utilized and how it is used. Refrigeration is often used in conjunction with modified environment packaging to increase the shelf life of fresh, perishable goods. The majority of MAP foods are wrapped in transparent film so that the retail client can see what they are buying.

Vacuum packaging, in which all of the gas in the container is eliminated, is an alternative to regulating or altering the atmosphere. This may be a highly effective strategy to delay chemical changes like the formation of oxidative rancidity, but caution must be used to stop the pathogen C. botulinum, which thrives in anaerobic environments. The packed food is subjected to a particular pasteurization procedure known as the psychrotrophic botulinum treatment to lower its numbers to commercially acceptable levels. Vacuum packing, gentle heating, and refrigerated storage have all been used to significantly lengthen shelf life. This served as the foundation for sous-vide cooking, which was developed in France as a way to produce high-quality meals for restaurant usage with a shelf life of up to 42 days when kept below 3°C. Since the initial sous-vide notion of pasteurizing at 70°C for 40 min., the thermal process has changed, and the objective procedure is now 90°C for 10 min. The packing materials' cleanliness is a crucial need to accomplish the longer shelf life.

Further methods and advancements

Food producers are always seeking for novel methods to provide meals with improved flavor and nutritional qualities. Conventional heat procedures may change the texture, flavor, and appearance of food while also reducing its vitamin content. Techniques that reduce or eliminate germs as effectively as conventional thermal systems while without negatively affecting the nutritional value of the food are currently being developed. The investigation of ultrasonic, pulsed light, electric field, and magnetic field systems, in addition to those listed below, is ongoing. The Advisory Committee on New Foods and Processes must first review every fully unique product, ingredient, or method in the UK before it may be commercialized. The ACNFP's main responsibility is to examine the safety of innovative foods and processes and to inform the government of their results. Novel Foods regulation has also been developed by the European Union.

Processing at high pressure

While high pressure processing was first discussed in the 1890s, Japanese food producers did not begin to explore its economic possibilities until the 1970s. There is no evidence that high pressure is effective on spores or enzymes, despite the fact that pressures of several thousand atmospheres are employed to kill microbes. Hence, microbial growth must overcome the fundamental barrier of chilly storage or high acidity. Jams were the first goods made in this manner in Japan, and the technique is now being researched in Europe and the States. Without aseptic filling, high pressure cannot be used to sterilize the package, which may limit its extensive use.

Heating ohmic

Ohmic heating uses thermal phenomena to accomplish its preservation goals, however unlike in-pack or heat exchanger heating, an electric current is given directly to the food. Food heats up similarly to a light bulb filament due to the electrical impedance of the meal to the current. The benefit is that far shorter cooking durations may be used than would otherwise be feasible, allowing the meal to retain more of its flavor and nutritious qualities. The drawback is that standard cooling techniques, which are sluggish compared to ohmic heating, must be used since ohmic cooling or any other way of achieving quick cooling cannot be used. The electrical characteristics of the particle and carrier liquid may be tailored such that the particulate warms preferentially and instantly, making big particulate foods suitable for ohmic heating. In order to pasteurize fruit preparations, where high particle definition is a crucial need, the sole commercial ohmic heater in operation in the UK is employed. When plastic Pergall bags are needed for food service, they are periodically carried to yoghurt makers in stainless steel containers for inclusion in yoghurts. In both instances, the filling is aseptic.

Irradiation

In contrast to the UK, where public opinion has essentially marginalized it, irradiation has found far broader uses in the US. Food that has been radioactively contaminated or includes irradiated substances must be labeled in the UK. It is very efficient in eradicating the germs found on fresh fruits like strawberries, significantly extending their shelf life. In addition to killing bacterial diseases like Salmonella on chicken, it also kills Salmonella on other types of fowl. Moreover, it may be used to stop potatoes from sprouting. The major benefit of it is that it hardly affects the food at all, making it almost impossible to determine if food has been exposed to radiation. It also has certain technical drawbacks, such as the fact that it shouldn't be used on dishes with a lot of fat since it might result in the development of bad flavors. Only dried herbs and spices, which are notoriously difficult to disinfect by other methods without significantly diminishing flavor, are now allowed for commercial use in the UK. Decontaminating packaging is one of irradiation's main uses. Irradiation is used to kill bacteria in the Pergall bags used to pack electrically heated fruit preparations.

Processing of membranes

Membrane processing, which often takes the shape of porous tubes, hollow fibers or spiral windings, and ceramics, has been utilized for many years in the food industry for filtering and separation operations. The portion that goes through the membrane is referred to as the permeate or filtrate, while the membrane retains the dissolved and suspended particles, which are known as the concentrate or retentate. The permeate, concentrate, or sometimes both, depending on the situation, might constitute the product. It is possible to cold pasteurize food by removing germs from water or liquid meals by choosing the membrane pore size. The cold pasteurization of milk, fruit juices, and beer are commercial examples. The bacteria present on the packing surfaces must be eliminated using sterilize solutions and/or heat since the membrane is employed to remove those in the food.

Processing using microwaves

Similar to ohmic heating, microwave processing uses thermal properties to kill germs. Polar molecules are excited at 950 and 2450 Hz, which generates thermal energy and raises temperature. A few microwave pasteurization units are in use in Europe; they are primarily used to manufacture pasta products in clear plastic trays. Foods that are susceptible to thermal deterioration may benefit from the benefits of quick heating. Due to the wide temperature variation within a package and the high equipment capital costs, the technology has not been widely adopted. In order to achieve longer shelf lives, products are sold in chilled storage after being pasteurized by the heat produced by microwaves. Due to the requirement for air overpressure to preserve the shape of the flexible packages during processing, microwave sterilisation has not advanced significantly. This complicates continuous systems since transfer valves are needed to move fluid between the chambers.

Household microwave usage has a far bigger influence on the food business since a huge variety of items are now packaged for microwave cooking. Complex pack- aging designs that use subsector technology to shade sections for more consistent re-heating performance. Commercial packaging is starting to include research into techniques to improve the desired browning and crisping of certain meals.

Quality of packaged goods and shelf life

This is done to demonstrate how choosing the right packaging materials may have an impact on the product quality and shelf life of packaged goods. With examples of how packaging has been used to impact them, factors that affect product quality and shelf life are examined. Packaging itself sometimes has an impact on shelf life. For instance, this might be the consequence of food components migrating into the packaging or tainting substances migrating from the container into the food. As a result, this chapter also covers the detrimental impact that unsuitable packing materials may have on the quality and shelf life of a product.

It is never simple to come to an agreement on the concept of shelf life. Consumers, merchants, distributors, manufacturers, and farmers are just a few of the groups that give somewhat diverse viewpoints on shelf life, each reflecting the element that is most significant and important to them. It is crucial for customers that items are secure and up to par in terms of quality. Since this is seen to be a sign of freshness, customers often actively seek for the product on the shelf with the longest remaining shelf life. The greatest uncertainty for producers when planning shelf life experiments is probably how consumers will handle items in terms of storage and usage. Retailers must ensure that product quality meets or exceeds customer expectations to encourage repeat business. Product shelf life must be established such that this is true for the duration of the product's life, enabling enough product life for the retail supply chain, product turnover, and some product life for the customer. Manufacturers, who are in charge of determining a product's shelf life, must be prepared to defend their choice. Also, they face intense pressure to manufacture goods that satisfy merchants' demands for shelf life, which often determines whether or not a product is stocked. A key motivator for product and packaging innovation to prolong product life is achieving the required product shelf life. To go along with advancements in novel preservation methods, several new packaging materials, such as modified environment packaging, have been created. It is impossible to overstate the importance of packaging for maintaining and extending shelf life. A definition of shelf life is given in the Institute of Food Science and Technology Guidelines: The term "shelf life" refers to the amount of time that a food product will be secure in its ability to maintain the intended sensory, chemical, physical, and microbiological properties as well as to conform to any label declaration of nutritional information. This definition encompasses the majority of viewpoints while allowing for some flexibility, or "desired... qualities," in determining a product's shelf life. This is crucial since quality is often a business factor based on the firms' marketing strategies after safety requirements have been addressed.

The best way to assess a product's shelf life is throughout the product development stage. It's critical that the packaging needs for the product be taken into account early on in the product development process since the packaging may be one method for restricting activities that affect shelf life or may limit the shelf life of the product itself. Testing for shelf life is done by storing representative samples of the finished product in environments that are likely to reflect the circumstances it will experience from manufacturing through consumption. Quality concerns may be taken into account when the product's microbiological safety has been established. This may be determined by microbiological counts, chemical composition, or sensory evaluation. In most circumstances, it is most likely a mix of these. It is preferable to use indirect or predictive techniques for calculating shelf life for items with lengthy shelf lifetimes. The most typical way to extend shelf life is to raise the temperature, although other factors that are known to impact product stability, including humidity, shaking, or exposure to light, may also be employed. These tests are often product-specific and based on in-depth understanding of the product and how it would react under increasing circumstances. This strategy runs the risk of causing chemical reactions or micro-biological development that would not occur under normal storage settings.

Predictive modeling is another method of expediting shelf life testing. In this method, mathematical models are used to forecast a product's shelf life or the amount of a shelf life limiting feature as a function of the product's composition. The ambient humidity level at which a meal will neither receive moisture from the air nor lose moisture to it is known as the equilibrium relative humidity. For a considerable variety of produced bakery items, a correlation between the ERH and the mould-free shelf life has been established. A product's ERH may be computed using conversion factors to determine the sucrose equivalents that each of its constituents contributes, and this can be done to determine how long the product will remain mold-free. Mathematical models that explain the development of microbes under certain parameters, such as temperature, pH, or quantity of preservative, are the foundation of predictive food microbiology. Predictive food microbiology models are readily accessible, including those from the USDA Pathogen Modelling Program and the Campden & Chorleywood Research Association FORECAST Service. With microbial quantity serving as the shelf life limiting criteria, these models may be used to estimate the anticipated growth of target organisms and swiftly analyze the impact that changes in product formulation will have on microbial growth.

In the EU, neither the definition of shelf life nor the methodology for determining shelf life are regulated by law. The producer is exclusively accountable for releasing risk-free items into the market, according to Directive 92/59/EEC on general product safety. According to the EU Regulation on Food Labeling, pre-packaged goods must have a use-by date or a date of minimal durability if they are microbiologically very perishable. The term "date of minimal durability" is used to refer to the time period during which, when food is correctly maintained, certain characteristics are retained. The producer is responsible for setting this date. As they are in the greatest position to evaluate a product's characteristics, individuals in charge of labeling the item decide if a use by or best before indication is necessary. Selling any food beyond the use-by date is illegal, and only authorized individuals are allowed to change or remove the date.

Some specialized laws have an indirect effect on shelf life. For instance, if additives are employed to attain the target shelf life, laws governing their usage are significant. Regulation that establishes maximum storage and distribution temperatures for chilled and frozen goods has a big influence, particularly on foods whose shelf-life limiting processes depend heavily on temperature.

Law pertaining to food contact materials aims to prevent the transmission of any elements from food contact materials that might damage health or food quality. Under the Food Safety Act in the United Kingdom, two food rules specify the particular standards for items that come into contact with food. The EC Directive 76/893/EEC gave rise to "The Materials & Articles in Contact with Food Regulations 1987 Statutory Instrument No. 1523, as amended by Statutory Instrument 1994 No. 979," which stipulates the following: Materials and articles must be produced in accordance with good manufacturing practice so that, under their usual or foreseeable conditions of use, they do not transfer their constituents to foodstuffs in quantities that could:

Put human health in peril

May about an unacceptably altered shift in the food's composition or a decline in its organoleptic qualities. In materials and products made with polyvinyl chloride, limits are set for the amount of vinyl chloride monomer that may be transmitted to food. The "Plastic Materials and Articles in Contact with Food Regulations" (Statutory Instrument No. 1376 of 1998, as amended by Statutory Instrument No. 3162 of 2000) set restrictions on the composition of materials and articles intended for food contact as well as the migration of constituents into food. They also outline the procedures needed to test food migration. The Regulations implement three European Council and Commission Directives: Council Directive 82/711/EEC, which outlines the fundamental guidelines required to measure the migration of constituents of plastic materials and articles intended to come in contact with foodstuffs; Council Directive 85/572/EEC, which outlines the list of food simulants to be used for testing migration from plastic food contact materials and articles; and Commission Directive 90/128/EEC, a significant directive. The Directive deals with the composition of plastics, which are broadly defined as organic polymers. However, it does not cover many auxiliary packaging elements, such as regenerated cellulose film, elastomers and rubber, paper and board, surface coating containing paraffin or microcrystalline waxes, and ion-exchange resins, which have their own Directives. The maximum amount of components that are permitted to migrate from plastic materials and items into food is capped at 10 mg dm2 contact area as a general overall migration limit. A positive list of authorized monomers and starting materials, which are the only such materials allowed for use in food contact polymers, is established by the Directive and its five revisions. Certain monomers and starting materials have specific migration limitations, which limit residual levels in the end product.

CHAPTER 6

FACTORS AFFECTING PRODUCT QUALITY AND SHELF LIFE

[1]Dr. Shwetha. M.S, [2]Dr. Subhashini S,
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]ms.shwetha@jainuniversity.ac.in

For many foods, certain or important characteristics that may be foreseen at the time of product production restrict the shelf life of the product. This is either based on prior experience with comparable goods, observations of them, or analysis of the product's composition and the environment it will be exposed to during its life. And the processes that will likely shorten the shelf life as a consequence of the interaction of internal and external variables.

The following are examples of intrinsic factors, which are characteristics deriving from the final product's composition:

Water movement

1. Total acidity, pH, and acid type
2. In the finished product, natural microflora and surviving microbiological counts
3. The presence of oxygen
4. Redox capacity
5. Preservatives in addition to the product's natural biochemistry and chemistry
6. Product development
7. Interactions in packaging.
8. As processing is seldom able to make up for subpar raw materials, choosing raw materials is crucial for regulating inherent variables.
9. Extrinsic influences, which come from the environment the product interacts with during its existence, include the following:
10. Processing time-temperature profile
11. Management of temperature during distribution and storage
12. Relative humidity during distribution and storage
13. Exposure to light during distribution and archiving
14. Consumer handling Gas environment composition within packaging.

Several of these extrinsic variables may be significantly influenced by product packaging, and many advancements in packing materials have been motivated by the desire to lessen the impacts of these external factors and increase shelf life. In rare cases, such as when there is a full light and oxygen barrier, packaging may enhance shelf life on its own. But, more often than not, packaging is only one of a number of barriers that collectively have a shelf life-limiting impact.

It's a good idea to have a backup plan in case anything goes wrong. These shelf-life reducing reactions or processes may be divided into three categories for simplicity of discussion: chemical/biochemical, microbiological, and physical.

Yet, these categories provide a useful foundation for discussion even if the impacts of these processes are seldom mutually exclusive. These elements' impacts are not necessarily negative; in certain cases, they are necessary for a product to acquire the desirable qualities.

Chemical and biological reactions

If reactants are present and the reaction's activation energy threshold is surpassed, chemical processes will continue. The concentration of the reactants, the temperature, and/or other energy sources, such as light-induced reactions, all affect the rate of the reaction. The rate of response is often assumed to double for every 10°C increase in temperature.

Enzymes are specialized proteins that catalyze biological processes. These may be very focused catalysts that reduce the activation threshold, greatly accelerating the pace of reaction. The suffixase is often added to the name of the substrate an enzyme works on, for example, lipase acts on lipids and protease acts on proteins, indicating the specificity of the enzyme for that substrate in the name. This article will describe some instances of chemical and biological processes that have an impact on shelf life and how packaging may influence those reactions.

Oxidation

Oxygen and a multitude of chemical food constituents interact, changing the appearance, flavor, nutritional value, and sometimes even the physical properties of food. Although the impacts may sometimes be detrimental and reduce shelf life, other times they are necessary to provide the desired product attributes. Using packaging, oxygen may be excluded, controlled, and contained at a level best suited for a certain product. The quantity of oxygen that foods take in and the amount that causes quality changes in them varies depending on their avidity for oxygen. In order to evaluate the oxygen permeability of packing materials needed to achieve a given shelf life, estimates of the maximum oxygen tolerance of foods are helpful.

Foods with a high fat content, especially unsaturated fats, are prone to oxidative rancidity and flavor alterations. Comparatively speaking to unsaturated fatty acids, saturated fatty acids oxidize more slowly. Antioxidants that are present naturally or that are introduced either delay the rate of rancidity or lengthen the lag period before it starts. The formation of free radicals in the presence of metal ion catalysts like iron, heat, or light - known as the classical free radical route -, photo-oxidation in which photo-sensitizers like chlorophyll or myoglobin affect the energetic state of oxygen, or an enzymic route catalyzed by lipoxygenase are the three different chemical pathways that can start the oxidation of fatty acids. Regardless of how oxidation was started, once oxygen has been added to the unsaturated fatty acids to generate hydroperoxides by any of these mechanisms, the subsequent breakdown of these colorless, odorless intermediates continues along comparable paths. Aldehydes, alcohols, and ketones, which are the breakdown products of hydroperoxides, are what give off the characteristic rotten, stale, and cardboard smells associated with lipid oxidation.

Since the first and second phases of the process have low activation energies, lowering the storage temperature does not halt oxidative rancidity. When rancidity is a shelf life limiting issue, solutions used to increase shelf life include lowering the oxygen content to below 1%, eliminating variables that trigger oxidation, and using anti-oxidants.

Tocopherol, a natural antioxidant present in cocoa liquor, offers milk chocolate a high level of protection against rancidity. White chocolate, on the other hand, lacks the antioxidant protection of cocoa liquid and is thus vulnerable to oxidative rancidity especially that brought on by light. Its shelf life is less than that of milk or plain chocolate, even with minimal barrier packaging. The very tiny improvement in shelf life that would follow from this adjustment, however, would not be worth the increased expense to remove oxygen from the pack.

The beginning of rancidity, especially in nuts, is what limits the shelf life of snack goods. Such delicate items are often gas flushed to eliminate oxygen from the packaging and filled entirely with nitrogen to prevent oxidation and act as a cushion against physical harm. Although higher added value items with longer shelf life needs are often packed in metallized polyester/LDPE laminates, commodity products with short shelf lives are typically packaged in PVdC-coated OPP/LDPE laminates. Studies on rancidity in potato chips in relation to the light barrier qualities of different films revealed that packaging films with superior light barrier capabilities had longer shelf lives in terms of rancidity. Crisps' shelf life was shortened when kept for an extended period of time at room temperature and humidity levels that did not produce texture changes from moisture absorption.

For further information, please visit the website. After 8 days, polyethylene-packaged trout refrigerated on ice may taste noticeably rotten. The shelf life at 0°C is extended to 20 days for trout vacuum-packed in a plastic material with limited oxygen permeability. Degradation of frozen fish is slowed down by low storage temperatures paired with effective packing. Fish often develop freezer burn, thus the container has to be well fitting and have a low water vapour transfer rate. Use of a packaging material with low oxygen permeability is particularly important for fatty fish, and vacuum packing is suggested. It's a good idea to have a backup plan in case anything goes wrong. By utilizing basic, unlacquered cans, this can be reduced in tomato products that are canned. The tin coating's primary function is to preserve the underlying steel, but it also creates a climate within the container that is chemically reducing. Tin's incorporation into the product consumes any remaining oxygen, preventing quality loss due to product oxidation. The maximum allowable amount of tin in canned goods in the UK is 200 mg kg1. Nevertheless, the degree of tin dissolution into the product must be taken into consideration in the designated shelf life of the product. Using completely lacquered cans will prevent tin disintegration, but oxygen-induced quality loss is more likely to happen.

The top of tomato ketchup that came into touch with the oxygen in the headspace used to develop a black neck condition. This was concealed by applying a label to the bottle's neck, which covered the stain. Since then, it has been discovered that oxidation is based on the amount of iron in the ketchup, and blackening has been stopped. The pigment in raw meat known as oxymyoglobin, or oxygenated myoglobin, is what gives it its brilliant, appetizing red color, which consumers connect with freshness and high eating quality. With traditionally packaged fresh beef, the flesh is placed on a plastic tray and covered with a substance that is extremely gas permeable, allowing practically unlimited oxygen to reach the myoglobin and enhancing the red color. Fresh beef may be vacuum-packed to significantly extend its shelf life owing to the decreased oxygen content of the pack. However, since myoglobin is converted to its reduced form, which most customers are unfamiliar with, the meat becomes purple and loses some of its red color. Life can be increased to roughly 2-3 times that of conventionally packed fresh beef by using MAP, which involves placing the meat on a tray with a volume about 2-3 times that of the meat and drawing out the air and replacing it with a gas mixture of about 80% oxygen to maintain the bright red color and 20% carbon dioxide to reduce bacterial growth.

The colorant that gives cooked cured meats their pink hue is called nitrosohemochrome. When this pigment is exposed to air and light, it ages quickly. Hence, to obtain the appropriate shelf life of cooked cured meats, vacuum packing or MAP is often employed. The oxygen level must be less than 0.3%, and in MAP, a regularly utilized combination is 60% nitrogen and 40% carbon dioxide. One way to keep the oxygen levels as low as possible is to use oxygen scavengers. Large appealing labels are often used on such packaging to block out light, shielding the goods from store illumination. Whole chickens are often wrapped in thin polyethylene bags for freezing after the chilling procedure. The majority of the time, turkeys and ducks are vacuum or shrink packaged in more costly plastics with a low WVTR and low oxygen permeability. Since turkey flesh has a propensity to grow rancid more rapidly than other fowl, it requires specific packaging.

Enzyme function

Being living goods, fruits and vegetables have a rate of respiration that influences how long they may be stored. Generally, the higher the rate of respiration, the shorter the shelf life. Peas and beans, which are immature storage organs, have substantially greater respiration rates and a lower shelf life than mature storage organs like potatoes and onions. The metabolic process known as respiration is how carbohydrates and oxygen are changed into more useable sources of energy for living cells. This metabolic process is supported by biochemical pathways that are highly organized and regulated. An appearance linked with senescence results from the depletion and exhaustion of the reserves utilized for respiration, which causes metabolic collapse. Tissue disruption during the cutting of fruits and vegetables for the fresh-cut market causes cell contents to leak out and promotes microbial invasion. Moreover, it causes a rise in respiration rate that exhausts reserves and lowers quality. This impact is much more pronounced in tissues with little reserve capacity, such as non-storage tissues like lettuce and spinach, or immature flower crops like broccoli. Using temperature control lowers respiration rate, increasing product life. By further inhibiting the development of yeasts, molds, and bacteria by temperature control in conjunction with MAP, shelf life is increased.

Senescence and the ripening process are accelerated by the plant growth regulator ethylene. It is a colorless gas with a flavor reminiscent to sweet ether. There are different levels of ethylene production across all plants, and some areas of plants produce more than others. The impact of ethylene depends on the material as well as temperature, exposure duration, and concentration. Several commodities are vulnerable to ethylene concentrations as low as 0.1 ppm if exposed over extended periods of time. Apples, avocados, melons, and tomatoes are climatacteric fruits that are especially susceptible to ethylene. When physical or cold damage affects the rate-limiting enzyme in the biochemical route that leads to ethylene generation and raises tissue sensitivity to ethylene, it causes ethylene production, especially in fruiting tissue. Senescence caused by ethylene has a big influence on quality loss. For more information, see the EPA website. The use of activated carbon and potassium permanganate increased the shelf life of MAP packed mangoes from 16 to 21 days.

Biological mechanisms

The majority of microbes will thrive or proliferate under these circumstances. Bacteria reproduce by splitting into two separate species, increasing their population exponentially. One bacterial cell might develop to 16 million cells in 8 hours under optimal circumstances, while certain bacteria can multiply and expand every 20 minutes. This doubling or generation time is avoided or prolonged under unfavorable circumstances, a property that is taken advantage of when creating food goods and procedures to obtain the appropriate shelf life.

Microorganisms will absorb nutrients from food throughout the development process and create metabolic waste products like gases or acids. Extracellular enzymes that are released by them may change the product's appearance, flavor, and other properties. Several of these enzymes will continue to persist beyond the death of the microbes that created them, continuing to cause product deterioration. When there are few organisms, the effects of growth might not be noticeable, but as the population grows, the presence of many yeasts, bacteria, and moulds becomes more noticeable due to the development of visible colonies, the production of slime or an increase in the turbidity of liquids, as well as the effects that gas production, acidification, and the off-odors brought on by secondary metabolites have on the acceptability of the food product. It's not always obvious how microbial populations and food decomposition are related.

It depends on the quantity of microorganisms present, how they are composed in terms of kind and stage of development or activity, and the intrinsic and extrinsic characteristics of the food in which they are present whether or not they cause spoiling. Understanding which bacteria are most likely to cause product spoiling and what circumstances may be employed to either kill or lower the rate of development and multiplication are crucial for obtaining the intended shelf life of a product. This calls for the thoughtful alteration or selection of a food's internal and extrinsic properties.

The existence of food poisoning organisms is not always clear from changes in the food, and may only be apparent from the consequences they create, ranging from moderate illness to death. For many human infections, the more cells that are ingested, the higher the probability of infection and the shorter the time until sickness manifests. Thus, growth must be destroyed, inhibited, or at the very least, controlled. Certain invasive diseases, such as viruses and Campylobacter, have low infectious doses, such that food growth may not be required. When considering a product's shelf life, the primary consideration must always be its safety. If this safety is established, quality and business considerations may follow.

Food items are made and designed by using the optimal mix of intrinsic and extrinsic elements using knowledge of the starting levels of microorganisms and the circumstances that kill them or slow down their development rate. In order to attain a desired shelf life in terms of microbiological numbers, targeted product design and the determination of packaging requirements have benefited from the development and use of predictive microbiological growth models, especially for chilled foods.

It is common practice to utilize heat processing, which kills bacteria, to produce safe goods and increase shelf life. The most dangerous microorganisms that are present, the nature of the food in terms of viscosity, the pH of the food, the form of the pack, and the needed shelf life all influence how much heat treatment is necessary. Yet, the product's texture, flavor, and appearance are also altered by the heating process. This has led to a shift toward minimally processed foods, which combine a number of factors to achieve the desired shelf life, such as a mild heat treatment, antioxidant action, and controlled atmosphere packaging, each of which inhibits microbial growth, so that their combined effect allows the product to retain its sensory and nutritional properties.

Low acid foods are put into sterile, hermetically sealed jars during canning, which is normally done at temperatures of 115.5 to 121 C or higher to guarantee that all germs, particularly Clostridium botulinum, are eliminated. The important component is the thermal treatment, which is the integration of product temperature with time throughout the heating cycle at a specific process temperature and beginning product temperature, necessary for the coldest region of the product to acquire the requisite minimum botulinum cook of F03. The size and form of the container is significant. Retort pouches may be processed faster than a traditional cylindrical can because of its flat design. In most cases, the flavor and texture are also enhanced. Similar to sous-vide processing, sealed evacuated heat pouches or thermoformed trays are used to cook food in a vacuum. By first being sterilised separately and then brought together in a clean environment, aseptic processing fully eliminates the packaging's role as a barrier to heat transmission. After sterility has been achieved by heat processing, using packaging to keep it that way becomes essential for obtaining the specified product shelf life. Both the packaging and the pack seals must operate as a barrier to the entry of germs.

Low temperatures may hinder an organism's development and have an impact on its pace of growth. The makeup of organisms in the natural microflora will alter since certain microbes are specialized to flourish at cold temperatures. For instance, Gram-positive cocci and bacilli are the predominant microorganisms in fresh milk, which may soured the product if kept at warm temperatures. Psychrotrophic Gram-negative bacilli start to dominate the microflora at cold temperatures. From a microbiological perspective, the role of packaging is less significant to shelf life when temperature is used as the primary limiting factor to control the rate at which shelf life limiting processes proceed. This is because spoilage will occur regardless of packaging if the temperature is not maintained. Although while freezing temperatures may limit microbial development and even kill certain germs, the procedure is not always fatal.

Packaging is a significant component in obtaining the desired shelf life where vacuum packing or changed atmospheres are the main variables regulating microbial development throughout the shelf life. The main spoilage group in cooled proteinaceous foods, Pseudomonas species, needs oxygen to flourish. This kind of bacterium can't develop unless special atmospheres without oxygen are used or vacuum packing is used. Although other organisms can develop without oxygen, they often do so more slowly, lengthening the period before microbial deterioration. The gas mixture used in MAP must be selected to match the requirements of the particular product; this mixture often includes some combination of oxygen, nitrogen, and carbon dioxide. By lengthening the lag phase and generation time of vulnerable microorganisms, carbon dioxide at a concentration of 20–60% possesses bacteriostatic and fungistatic qualities and will inhibit the development of mold and aerobic bacteria. The amount of microorganisms present, the gas concentration, the temperature, and the permeability of the packing film are the main determinants of the antibacterial impact of carbon dioxide. As carbon dioxide is more soluble in water at lower temperatures and forms carbonic acid, the antibacterial action is intensified at these lower temperatures, making temperature management crucial to maximizing the advantages of MAP and vacuum packing. Nevertheless, not all of the effects of carbon dioxide are the same. For example, yeast cells are not much affected by it, whereas lactic acid bacteria grow better when carbon dioxide and low oxygen levels are present. As inert gas, nitrogen has no inherent antibacterial properties. It is often used to replace oxygen in goods that are vulnerable to the development of aerobic microbes and to avoid package collapse in items that absorb carbon dioxide.

Antimicrobial packaging materials operate as a barrier to microbial development, however they seldom serve as the primary factor limiting shelf life. You may get antimicrobial activity in one of two methods. A preservative designed for migration into the food is included in preservative-releasing or -migrating systems. When the target organism is present, non-migrating systems possess or create a substance that has antimicrobial action. The antibacterial ingredient might be integrated into the packing material for either system or applied topically. To achieve effective protection, the food and container must make the most contact possible. It is therefore especially suitable for items that have been vacuum-packed. The activity and efficacy of a variety of antimicrobial packaging materials that are marketed for use have been examined. The UK-based Microban Products Co.'s Microban technology, which inserts the biocide triclosan into almost any kind of plastic while leaving it free to travel to the surface to combat forming germs, is one example of this technology.

Processes that are physical and physicochemical

Physical alterations that shorten shelf life may be caused by either direct physical harm or physico-chemical reactions brought on by the chemistry of the food itself. Consumers often take for granted that packaging serves many important purposes, including safeguarding goods against physical dangers while being stored and distributed as well as environmental factors and contamination like dust and dirt, dehydration and rehydration, insect and rodent infestation, and dehydration and rehydration. Yet, if the product is to maintain its shelf life, careful evaluation of the level of protection needed for the product in light of the challenges of the storage and distribution chain through which it must transit is necessary. Packaging is often the most important element in reducing the impact of physical deterioration on the shelf life of a product. Although the risk of negligent or intentional tampering cannot be taken into consideration when determining a product's shelf life, using tamper-evident packaging offers a way to indicate if packaging and maybe a preservative system has been compromised.

Physical damage

Products are susceptible to vibration on transportation, compressive pressures during stacking in warehouses, and unexpected jolts and knocks throughout their lifespan, especially in storage, distribution, and consumer handling. It is a good idea to have a backup plan in case the backup plan fails. Heat seals and screw caps are particularly prone to breakage, which may cause leakage and negate the packaging's preservation effect. The outer carton offers protection from physical harm and from possible tampering for delicate items that are prone to crushing, such as soft cheeses, morning cereals, and biscuits. Fruit and vegetables that are prone to bruising need to be protected from hard handling, and the outer packaging used for distribution has to endure being stacked to great heights and being exposed to high and fluctuating humidity. The design of the packaging for this use should be dependent on the characteristics of the commodity, including the maximum humidity it can endure, the airflow permitted, the product's rate of respiration, and its bruise susceptibility.

Insect harm

Since it is often not seen until the product is opened, eating food that has been infested with insects may be quite unpleasant for the customer. While insect infestation may happen at any time after production, it most often happens during long storage times or during shipping. Even if the producer of the product may not be at fault, material losses may be costly, and legal disputes can seriously harm a brand's image. Penetrators and invaders are the two categories into which package pests are divided. Penetrators are cap- able of drilling through one or more layers of flexible packaging materials. By using barrier materials to stop odors from escaping the package, it is feasible to lessen infection with penetrators. The effectiveness of scent barriers may now be quickly assessed. Invaders are more prevalent and enter packages via existing holes, mainly generated by inadequate seals, openings formed by other insects or mechanical damage. It is crucial that seals be protected against insect assault for this reason. Insects may also be able to enter via the corners of square packaging. To reduce possible infection, several novel packing solutions have been developed.

Water changes

A primary physical reason for the shortening of food's shelf life is changes in moisture that result in moisture loss or increase. Hygroscopic foods need to be protected against moisture absorption, which results in texture loss, notably crispness, in dry items such morning cereals and biscuits. The inner liner offers the maximum food protection for breakfast cereals. and a coin. I think it's a coin. I're going to be a coin. I're going to be an op. By combining data from break point testing with knowledge of the characteristics of the moisture permeability of the packing material, or by doing shelf life testing, it will be possible to identify the most efficient kind of liner.

The greatest way to protect against or stop moisture loss is to keep storage at the proper temperature and humidity. Water loss may lower the quality of frozen and chilled meals. Due to the high financial worth of the goods sold based on weight, the weight reduction that results is often of higher significance. The losses in chilled items sold unwrapped from delicatessen counters, notably prepared fresh meat, fish, pâtés, and cheese, show the influence that packing may have. Such items have a far shorter shelf life than their wrapped equivalents—six hours as opposed to a few days to weeks. Consumers will choose products that have been loaded into the cabinet most recently rather than those that have been held in the display cabinet because evaporative losses cause a visual change to such a degree. In 1986, it was estimated that the direct cost of evaporative loss from unwrapped meals in chilled display cabinets exceeded £5 million annually. Due to the constant exposure of newly wet surfaces to the air stream, retailers with rapid product turnover will see larger average weight loss. Fruit and vegetable storage weight loss is mostly caused by transpiration. Most lose water if maintained at humidity levels below their equilibrium, which is 97-98%. The suggested range for storage humidity is 80-100% for practical reasons. The difference between the water vapor pressure exerted by the produce and the water vapor pressure in the air, as well as the air speed over the produce, determine the rate of water loss. Fruit and vegetables shrink or wilt when they lose as little as 5% of their moisture by weight. Low water vapour transfer rates are ideal for films used in MAP packaging to minimize fluctuations in the pack's moisture content. The quantity of water needed to saturate a rise in temperature of the air. Unless the humidity within the container reaches a value typical of that item at that temperature, i.e. the ERH, foods stored in sealed containers will lose or gain water. The humidity of the air will decrease if the temperature rises and the amount of water vapor in the atmosphere stays constant. In this case, minimizing temperature changes is essential to preventing moisture loss.

Freezer burn, or the development of greyish zones at the surface as a result of cavities emerging in the food's surface layer, is caused by severe dryness in frozen meals. Meat's lean surfaces become physically altered, rancid, and discolored as a result of freezer burn. Packaging made of materials with low water vapour permeability prevents water loss during storage and delivery. Dehydration will still happen if the box used does not fit firmly around the goods, however, since temperatures don't tend to remain consistent. Food that has had its water removed will still be present within the packaging as frost. Frost in packaging may account for 20% or more of the product's weight, and the product's subsequent desiccation increases its surface area and, as a consequence, its availability to oxygen, speeding up the rate of quality loss at the food's surface. The issue may be lessened by removing as much air from the pack as feasible. For retail packaged frozen goods like vegetables, on the other hand, this is challenging to do since these items are prone to interior frost development, especially if they are left in the outermost levels of display cabinets for an extended period of time. Internal frost development may be significantly decreased by employing laminates that include a layer of aluminum foil.

Sandwich sogginess is one of the most prevalent quality alterations caused by the transfer of moisture. Use of fat-based spreads to create a moisture barrier at the interface may help to decrease moisture transfer from the filling to the bread. Similar issues arise when moisture moves from fillings and toppings to dough and crust in goods with pastry- and crust-based bases, such as pies and pizzas. As moisture or oils travel, soluble colors may follow. For instance, red streaking of the cheese is visible in pizza toppings when salami and cheese are in touch, and in multi-layered trifles, color migration between layers may reduce the aesthetic appeal if the proper coloring technique isn't followed. Depending on the enzymes and substrates present, the transfer of enzymes from one component to another, such as when sliced unblanched vegetables come in touch with dairy products, might result in flavor, color, or texture issues. One way to solve these issues with packing is to package delicate components in separate containers so that consumers may mix them together at the time of consumption. Other solutions to these issues include edible films, some as apparent as covering a wafer biscuit in chocolate to stop moisture absorption, or as straightforward as an oil layer or a gelatin film over pâté.

A stopgap for the odor pickup

In actuality, many goods may sometimes be delivered or kept in a single trailer or container. Fresh meat, eggs, and dairy items are particularly susceptible to absorbing strong odors. Products made from chocolate often have a dull flavor and a high fat content. If they are improperly packaged and kept adjacent to strong-smelling substances, such cleaning solutions, or in stores among other sweets with strong flavors, like improperly packaged mints, the flavor may not be properly retained. Packaging lessens the issue, however the majority of plastic materials allow quite a bit of volatile penetration. The plastic used in vacuum packs and MAP has a low permeability, which lessens but does not entirely eliminate the absorption of foreign odors, or taints.

Spice scalping

Until equilibrium concentrations have been reached in the food and packaging, a chemical component present in the food that has a strong affinity for the packaging material will likely to be absorbed into or adsorbed onto the packaging. Scalping is the term for this loss of food ingredients due to packing. Scalping doesn't cause a direct threat to the food's safety or the addition of any unpleasant flavors or odors. Yet, sensory quality is impacted by the loss of volatile chemicals that add to a food's distinctive flavor. Unpleasant flavors that are naturally present in food are often covered up by other flavors, the high notes. If the packing material scalps the high notes, the product is either bland or the disagreeable flavors are more noticeable. The size, polarity, and solubility characteristics of the aroma component, as well as the composition of the polymer, both influence the degree of scalping. Comparing the amount of volatiles lost by low density polyethylene, linear low density polyethylene, poly-propylene, nylon 6, and polyethylene terephthalate during the scalping of apple aroma components revealed that polypropylene absorbed the most volatiles. When some food-packaging combinations are prone to scalping, adding a strong barrier layer may help to solve the issue. To guarantee that penetration through the barrier is kept to a minimum, such systems must be carefully developed and tested at high sensitivity levels.

Foods are moving from packaging

Migration may occur when food and packaging components come into close touch. The physico-chemical movement of ions and molecular species from the packaging into the food is referred to as additive migration. These interactions may benefit both the producer and the customer when utilized in active and intelligent packaging, but they also run the risk of lowering the product's quality and safety, which would shorten its shelf life.

A lot of research has been done on the migration of chemicals from packaging into food. This has included the creation of techniques for the use of chemical and sensory evaluation in the detection and diagnosis of issues. To forecast the degree of migration throughout the course of the product's shelf life, the kinetics of migration have been simulated. Several surveillance exercises examining the presence of certain immigrants in meals have been conducted in the UK. The background of these monitoring operations offers a helpful review of the worries raised by food contact materials in recent years.

The abandonment of plastic packaging

There are now more people worried about food contamination as a consequence of the widespread use of polymeric packaging materials. This might have an impact on both product quality and safety. The quantities of residual monomers and plastics additives, such as plasticizers and solvents, found in polymers designed for direct or intimate contact with food are often the focus of these issues. Thus, it is crucial that the formulation of plastic packaging materials be created to provide the most thorough polymerization process. A typical contemporary plastic packaging material may have a variety of different components, all of which have the potential to cause issues with quality and/or safety if the material is poorly designed or manufacturing faults occur.

Movement away from other packing materials

While plastics are the focus of the bulk of study into how food and packaging interact, more conventional materials like paper, board, and cans also pose issues. Food goods have been packaged using paper and board for a long time. As their composition is often simpler than that of plastics, there is less potential for migration. Yet, paper and board packaging has been implicated in a variety of food taint issues.

Chlorophenols may be to blame for any antiseptic odors. Investigation into a shipment of cocoa powder that had a particularly unpleasant smell and taste revealed that the paper sacks used to package the goods had up to 520 g/kg of chlorophenols in the paper itself, and up to 40 000 g/kg in the bonded side seams. It was determined that pentachlorophenol had been utilized as a biocide in adhesives whereas 2, 4-dichlorophenol, 2, 4, 6-trichlorophenol, and 2, 3, 4, 6-tetrachlorophenol had been created during the bleaching of wood pulp for paper manufacturing. It is crucial that the wood used to make pallets be untreated with such biocides.

By fungus-mediated methylation, chlorophenols may be converted to chloranisoles. These substances, which may cause intense musty odors, have lower sensory thresholds than the corresponding chlorophenol. It is known that moist paper and board materials may cause chlorophenols to turn into chloranisoles.

The use of recycled paper and board for food contact has drawn health concerns due to the potential migration of diisopropylnaphthalenes. These ingredients, which are often available in a variety of isomeric forms, are frequently employed in the production of specialty papers including thermal and carbonless copy paper. According to research, DIPNs are not completely removed from paper during recycling and might end up in dry foods including husked rice, wheat semolina pasta, egg pasta, and corn flour. The use of recycled paper and board packaging materials may cause DIPNs to migrate into food, according to a UK study. It was suggested that putting a film or laminate between the meal and the board would help to limit migration. There was no direct correlation between the absence of an intervening film wrap and lower DIPN levels in meals, however. Paradoxically, because DIPNs have been found as possible inhibitors of sprouting in potatoes, there may also be a case for their usage in functional packaging.

Another area of concern in recent years has been the migration of can lacquers into canned goods. The monomers bisphenol-A and bisphenol-F, as well as their diglycidyl ethers BADGE and BFDGE, are thought to be the migrant's most dangerous to human health. According to a research on the mechanisms behind the migration of bisphenol-A from cans into beverages, the chemical must be mobilized by heating the can to a temperature higher than the epoxy resin's glass transition temperature.

It has been suggested that BADGE may interact with dietary ingredients after migrating. 97% of BADGE could not be identified as BADGE, its hydrolysate, or its HCl derivative after being added to homogenates of tuna in water. A tiny portion of added BADGE was transformed to methylthiol derivatives after being added to several meals, but no additional products could be found. This may be because BADGE interacted with so many different ingredients that the ensuing chromatographic peaks were not detectable. These findings have the potential to indicate that the migration of BADGE into foods may have been greatly underestimated.

Catty taint, which was intensively researched in the 1960s, is another example of interactions between food and migrants from packing material. A first investigation revealed the emergence of a material with an unpleasant stench like cat pee. The culprit, according to later research, was a sulphur derivative of a substance linked to acetone.

Later, it was discovered that mesityl oxide, which rapidly forms from acetone in the presence of drying chemicals, was the source of the catty odor. At room temperature, the mesityl oxide generated combines quickly with hydrogen disulphide to produce the taint, although the catty odor is only detectable at much diluted concentrations. Greater amounts of the tainting substance are said to smell like mercaptan. In the most current investigation on catty food taints, two distinct manufacturers' cook-in-the-bag ham products were the subject of separate complaints of an overpowering off-odor. Acetone, a precursor to mesityl oxide, was present in the laminate packaging used for both items, although at amounts deemed insufficient to cause the development of catty taint. The source was identified as diacetone alcohol, which was detected at concentrations of 3 mg/m2 and 9 mg/m2, respectively. Inside the laminate packaging material, the DAA was dehydrated by an ethylene ionomer and changed into mesityl oxide. The authors came to the conclusion that catty taint in foods high in sulfur might be avoided by eliminating the use of mistily oxide precurssors, such as DAA, in packing materials.

CHAPTER 7

FACTORS AFFECTING MIGRATION FROM FOOD CONTACT MATERIALS

[1]Dr. Shwetha. M.S, [2]Dr. Subhashini S,
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]ms.shwetha@jainuniversity.ac.in

The degree of migration from food contact materials into food is depending on a variety of parameters. The number of potential migrants that are present in the packing material itself is clearly of utmost significance. The packaging must be thoughtfully designed and produced in order to reduce these levels. A meal may need to be protected from direct touch with something like a printed surface if specific difficulties have been seen with migration due to the amount of interaction between the food and container.

While migration is often a slow process, it is important to take into account how long the food and packaging will be in touch when attempting to foresee possible migration problems. So, a chilled dairy product with a limited shelf life may be less likely to experience migration than a package of shortbread cookies with a six-month shelf life. The internal characteristics of a meal have a significant impact on the likelihood of migration. The concentration of a potentially migrating packaging component is progressively transferred to the food, producing a gradual drop in the packaging and a rise in the food. A point of equilibrium is eventually attained when the constituent's concentration in food and packaging remains constant. The amount of the element in the food at the point of equilibrium depends on the physical affinity of the constituent for the packaging and food; for instance, the amount of styrene that migrates depends in part on the lipid content of the meal. A investigation of the migration of polystyrene into cocoa powder and chocolate flakes served as a demonstration of this. Styrene concentrations in cocoa drinks varied from 7 to 132 g kg1 and in the higher fat chocolate flakes from 414 to 1447 g kg1. Residual styrene in the packing material was measured at around 320 mg kg1. Just the chocolate flakes were tainted with styrene, according to sensory analysis. Consequently, it could be feasible to reduce the amount of migration into foods from food contact materials by taking the content of the food into account. In flavour scalping, which was covered previously in this chapter, the process of dividing ingredients between food and packaging to a point of balance also takes place. Pure or mixed fatty esters were used as a food-simulant in an experiment on the migration of paramagnetic additives from rigid PVC, and it was discovered that there was a propensity for the fatty esters to migrate into and plasticize the PVC matrix. This had the effect of making the additive more mobile and hastened its entry into the food imitation.

Selection of packing to prevent migration and packaging taints

Making ensuring the material conforms to applicable laws is of utmost significance when choosing packaging in general. To ensure that the packing is secure, this may need precise and worldwide migration measures. Consider all of the finished product's elements, their potential interactions, and the impact those interactions will have on the food when choosing a packaging material for a specific use. Three questions may be used to assess the likelihood of taints: First, does the packing material's composition have been optimized to reduce the number of potentially migrating components that are accessible to migrate into food? Second, how likely is it that any potentially migrating components will find their way into the meal? The answer to this question depends on the food's composition, which affects how well migrants adhere to the food matrix. The bulk of migratory constituents that are likely to cause taints are hydrophobic, making them more likely to cause issues in meals heavy in fat. What effect, if any, is the chemical that is migrating expected to have on the final product? The intensity of the product's flavor has an impact on this. For instance, if there is identical amounts of migration into white chocolate and a meat pie, the chocolate may become unpleasant to taste but the pie may not show any signs of it. As a result, the food's flavor qualities determine the degrees of migration that may be tolerated.

Techniques for observing migration

Monitoring the prevalence and effects of migration from packaging into food may be done in two ways. The first and most common method is sensory evaluation, when a panel evaluates a product to see whether interaction with the packaging has changed its sensory characteristics. The advantage of this method is how simple it is to put together and train a panel. Since the panel is employing the same tools for analysis that a customer would use when opening a product, namely the olfactory senses, the data gained from a correctly planned evaluation is of tremendous significance to a package or food maker. The panel should thus be able to identify any issues that would be obvious to a customer.

The drawback of a sensory method is its inability to identify issues after they have been discovered. It is appropriate to use instrumental chemical analysis when issues have been discovered, whether through a quality assurance sensory panel or a customer complaint, or when they are anticipated, for example, when developing a new packaging material or when starting to use a new supplier for a packaging component. Chromatographic techniques may be used to spot variations between a sample of questionable packaging and a sample used as a reference. This may provide in-depth information on issues including the presence of contaminants, excessive amounts of plasticizers, or residual solvents or monomers.

The food samples are kept in two glass tanks, one of which has the substance being tested and the other only the food. Often, the food is not put in close proximity to the subject of the research. For the safety of the sensory panel and to limit the sorts of elements that might contaminate the meal, this is being done. Odors might be transferred indirectly to the food by way of the air within the chamber due to the volatile nature of odor component molecules. A known portion of the packing material is positioned in one of the tanks such that it encircles the bowl that contains the meal. The tank is covered with a lid and kept at room temperature for a certain amount of time, often 24 hours. The packing material is not used for assembling or storing the other tank.

The triangle test, which is based on British Standard BS5929: 3:1984 "Sensory Assessment on Sensory Analysis of Food, Part 3, Triangular Test," is often the most effective way to compare the sensory characteristics of control and test food samples. Aliquots of food samples are taken from the tanks and put into identical containers before being presented to the assessors. The assessors are given three samples, two of which are the same. The assessor is then asked to say which sample differs from the other two, and they are expected to respond even if they don't see any difference. It is crucial to utilize enough assessors to distinguish between randomly generated replies and strongly observed differences. Care should be taken to ensure that all samples are presented and look uniformly, using controlled lighting if required, and to prevent distractions such outside scents or noise.

Instrumental chemical analysis may be used to find the root of tainting issues that have been reported as well as to regularly check for analytes that are known to be potential migrants. A typical chemical examination would start with a headspace study of the suspicious packing material and the food within utilizing a gas chromatogram/mass spectrometer and comparable, uncontaminated reference samples for comparison. Comparing the GC/MS chromatograms of the two packing samples may often identify distinct discrepancies that may provide light on the origin of the contamination. For example, a significant peak for benzophenone may indicate that a UV curable ink was not properly cured. When choosing which analyses should be the focus of the investigation, reliable sensory data might be useful. The chromatograms of the food samples may be examined with regard to those analyses after variations between the two packaging samples have been determined in order to determine if the indicated component may have been the cause of the taint.

The GC-sniffing method may be very helpful when this strategy fails or when reference samples are not available. The GC exit is divided for this method so that part of the flow is routed to a detector and the remaining portion flows via a sniffing port where the scent is evaluated. It is typical for tainting substances to have extremely low sensory thresholds, which means that just a very tiny chromatographic peak will result from a very low concentration that yet produces an odor that can be readily noticed. The sensory assessor's reaction may be used to determine the chromatographic retention time of the tainting chemical using GC-sniffing, and mass spectrometry can be used to validate that component's identification. It may be important to routinely check samples of packing material for clues that the issue may be reoccurring if particular faults have resulted in a taint. Establishing a regular chromatographic procedure or using in-line electronic nasal sensors to continuously check for any issues may achieve.

Logistical packaging for food marketing systems

This article talks about the function of logistical packaging in food marketing schemes. Distribution packaging, transit packaging, industrial packaging, intermediate packaging, and shipping containers are just a few of the numerous names for logistical packaging. Throughout, the phrase logistical packaging is used to emphasize the significance of integrating packaging with all supply chain processes.

Food is distributed via intricate distribution networks that round the globe through logistical networks. Supply chains may vary from the manual delivery of vegetables from a neighbor's garden to the use of specialized trans-global distribution networks to acquire exotic and uncommon processed goods. A wide range of operational variants provide farm markets, traditional grocery shops, restaurants, fast food takeout, food service institutions, and direct marketing systems. Also, a variety of packaging kinds, sizes, and formats are used to provide them.

In a typical supply chain for processed foods, the logistics process starts on the farm. Bulk or semi-bulk packages of goods are sent to manufacturers, where the food is prepared and packaged to add value. Unit loads are sent to wholesalers or retail distribution facilities, where orders are blended into loads, delivered to retailers, and disassembled for retail display. Customers purchase a variety of packages there and bring them home, where they are all opened, thrown away, and either taken to a recycling center or gathered and brought to a landfill.

Packaging has a huge influence on productivity and the cost of all logistical activities in a supply chain. The size and density of packages directly affect transport and storage costs. Unit loads affect handling costs. Accurate identification methods are necessary for effective inventory control. Customer service is influenced by how effectively things are packaged to preserve them and by how simple they are to open, display, and sell. The resources, manufacturing process, repurposing, and disposal of the packaging all have an influence on the environment. The functional needs for logistical packaging to preserve, create value, and communicate are covered in the first portion of this article. The second portion explores the connections between packaging and physical processes in manufacturing, transportation, warehousing, and retail. Testing and assessing packages for shock, vibration, and compression performance are covered in the third part. The most popular types of logistical packing are described in the last section. They include corrugated fiberboard boxes, shrink-film bundles, plastic totes, stretch wrapping, and pallet platforms.

Logistical packaging's purposes

The three interconnected purposes of logistical packaging are communication, usefulness, and protection. Instead of merely considering packaging in terms of the conventional materials, there is a growing tendency to consider the functions and value that it offers. The purpose of packaging is to increase sales while lowering delivery costs as part of an overall system.

Protection

The protection of the food and the customers comes first. Since spoiling and distribution degrade waste production and logistical resources, protection is a crucial packaging function. Replacement orders incur additional expenses, and delays may cost businesses clients. Some food packaging that has lost its integrity may cause problems with the quality and safety of the product. The qualities of the product and the distribution environment, together with the related risks, determine the kind and degree of protection that a package is anticipated to provide. A fundamental purpose of packaging is to offer the appropriate protection utilizing the lowest cost materials. The connection may be thought of as follows:

Characteristics of the product Logistical risks package security

The features of a product that may degrade or be damaged over time are relevant. The quality and safety of food items are especially susceptible to biological and chemical alterations. Extreme temperature exposure, exposure to dynamic forces, insect infestation, and environmental enemies like oxygen, moisture, and time are just a few of the dangers that might arise in a distribution environment. Further chapters in this book cover the relevance of packaging qualities, attributes, and preservation abilities of food products. It is important to note that the amount of time a food item must remain refrigerated before it spoils depends on how long it spends in storage, in transportation, and on the store shelf. Fresh food must have shorter temperature-controlled channels so that its packaging may last longer.

The shipping container often offers protection from dynamic pressures, handling impacts, in-transit vibration, and warehousing stacking. Testing may be used to forecast how effectively a product's packaging will guard against physical harm such bruising, breaking, denting, and shattering, as well as how much abuse it can resist. The remainder of this chapter describes a few common dynamic tests. The forms of handling, transit, and storage used determine the dynamic dangers of a logistical system and, thus, the most relevant tests to be done. Companies may need to package products for a range of circumstances if they employ a variety of distribution channels.

Damage is a sign of a deeper issue that may be resolved by altering the packing or distribution methods. Often, it is less expensive to lessen dangers than to enhance packaging. For instance, it is cheaper expensive to decrease the clamp truck's force than to replace to stronger boxes. Alternate transportation routes and storage racks in warehouses may minimize damage, and good cleanliness and pest control procedures during distribution can minimize the requirement for packing to guard against pest infestation.

Utility/productivity

Utility, the second packaging purpose, is described as worth to a user. The logistical system is the user in the case of logistical packing, and productivity is the value. Since distribution requires a lot of effort and money, productivity in logistics is a major challenge. The simple definition of productivity is the proportion of actual output to real input:

Being productive Input/output statistics for packages in logistics

The ratio of an activity's output—such as the quantity of goods loaded onto a truck—to its input—such as the manpower and forklift time needed—is known as the logistical productivity. The majority of research on logistical productivity focus on increasing worker productivity and improving input utilization. Yet, packaging measures like size reduction and unitization may simply boost the production of logistics operations. Palletization is an excellent illustration of how productivity may be greatly increased compared to break-bulk handling in most material handling processes. Unitization makes it possible for one person to move thousands of kg in an hour using a forklift.

Virtually all metrics for logistical productivity are expressed in terms of the quantity of packages. Examples include how many cartons are loaded into a trailer per hour, how many packages are picked per hour at a distribution center, how many packages can fit into a cubic meter of space in a vehicle or warehouse, how long it takes to restock retail shelves, and how much it costs to dispose of waste. The number that can be handled per hour or the number that fits into a truck are directly impacted by packaging layout.

Since healthy workers are more productive than those involved in personal injury litigation, ergonomics is also a practical concern. Shipping containers are a major source of accidents in physical distribution operations. Two categories exist: chronic stress injuries brought on by physical handling of items and accidents, which often include an oversized package falling on someone. It has traditionally been assumed that routine manual handling of packages won't result in persistent back injury. It's been a while since I've done this, but I think I'm going to try it again. The EU has established ergonomic criteria in Directive 90/269/EEC, while the US Occupational Safety and Health Administration has released rules for the maximum weight of physically handled items and adequate handholds. The suggested package weight depends on the quantity and frequency of lifts, the length of the worker's hands, the amount of twisting required, and the firmness of the hand grip. The suggested weight limit for the majority of common material handling tasks is between 20 and 30 lb.

Communication

As logistical information systems advance in complexity, communication—the third packaging function—becomes increasingly crucial. The development of efficient and integrated management of material flow, inventory, transportation, and warehousing has relied heavily on electronic data exchange and control. Accurate and timely information on the status of the packed product is necessary for EDI to be successful. Practically speaking, the product is represented throughout the distribution process by the package. Information regarding a product's status change is recorded in different logistics records each time it occurs, such as when it is chosen for a warehouse order.

Inventory data, shipping records, bills of lading, order picking lists, order receipt verification, accounting payables and receivables, manufacturing and logistics system monitoring, and retail pricing are among the information systems that record a status change. Packing codes may also be used to arrange items according to their final destinations in a factory, warehouse, or shipping facility. Foreign shipments also need labels for handling instructions in the language of the shipping origin, destination, and intermediate stops.

For effective information management, it is essential to identify stock-keeping units correctly, including by SKU number, name, brand, size, color, lot, code dates, weight, and package number. Reading the cargo and entering or updating its status in an information system are required for every logistical task. Precision is crucial. SKU details must be easily readable. Employees must be able to identify an item from its label with ease.

The use of automated identification is the most widely adopted trend for lowering mistakes and improving the effectiveness of the information flow. A systems approach to managing information is made possible by barcodes and radio frequency identification, which standardizes each input to decrease mistakes. A scanner needs a line of sight to read bar codes. When triggered by radio frequency, parcels may make long-distance calls home thanks to RFID. Additionally, when RFID tags travel through the supply chain, fresh data may be added to them. As packages may theoretically be directly connected to a supply chain's information management system, RFID holds the potential to revolutionize package identification. The readability of these automated identification forms relies on how well each reader in the system can read the package label, both technologically and symbolically. It is vital to employ a uniform zymology if automated identification is going to be used across a logistical system. There are several groups that establish standards for this.

Issues with integration and activity-specific logistics

The three packaging functions protection, usefulness, and communication directly affect one another despite having been studied individually. Each function's significance changes depending on the logistical process. These functions are sometimes subject to trade-offs. Unitization, for instance, improves handling safety and efficiency but may result in less use of transportation cubes and different labeling requirements than break-bulk shipping.

There are numerous different logistical system configurations from the perspective of the packages. Unit loads are often carried by full truckload to the wholesale level in supply chains for food and consumer goods. Here, orders are chosen using one of many standard techniques before being dispersed in mixed loads to different kinds of retail stores using different kinds of pallets, trolleys, or platforms. On the other hand, certain food goods are transported straight to a retail shop without the need of pallets by being floor loaded onto trailers. Direct and wholesale channels are also included in food service supply chains. Moreover, in e-commerce, each box may use a little parcel delivery system to go alone or at least with strangers.

Packaging in each sort of system must not only provide security, usefulness, and communication for certain activities but also ease changes between operations. Products in logistical systems often change hands and locations, necessitating packaging that meets a variety of user and functional requirements. A slipsheet packing technique, for instance, shouldn't be used to maximize trailer cube usage without taking into account how it would lengthen the consignee's unloading time if he or she lacks the necessary handling equipment. The more complicated the system, the more research is required to build packages that will optimize the system, including handling techniques, transit modes, facility dimensions, damage causes, and communication requirements. The next sections go through the standard functional specifications for packaging at each stage of the supply chain, including the food processor, transportation, warehousing, and customer service concerns.

Difficulties with packaging in food production and retail

Food processors are mostly focused on the packaging process. They place a strong focus on the price and caliber of inbound packaging materials, while also considering the efficiency and effectiveness of the packing and filling process, as well as cleanliness and automation. Packaging may be a crucial control point in a product manufacturer's hazard analysis key control plan when food safety is in danger. Many food processors never find the opportunity to look beyond their receiving and shipping docks since these packaging concerns are so crucial. Yet, there are other ways that packing may enhance both incoming and outgoing logistics. The next parts of this chapter discuss outbound opportunities, which are those that concentrate on the requirements of the client.

A factory's incoming raw materials and ingredients must be safeguarded and made simple to handle and identify. These packaging must be quickly and cheaply emptied and disposed. The high price of landfilling has pushed companies to look for less costly disposal options. Manufacturers are financially rewarded for recycling or reusing the shipping containers they get. Since a food processor often has a direct contact with its suppliers and a short turn-around cycle, reuse has become a particularly attractive method where cleanliness can be guaranteed. An effective reusable packaging solution must include both of these components. In order to reduce the number of containers in the system, the rapid cycle is required. To discuss rental or return obligations, a close connection is required.

Transport problems

Shock and vibration testing is sometimes referred to as transit testing since packaging protection during shipping is so crucial. The connection between carriers and the logistics system makes transportation damage especially obvious and well-documented. Common law holds that transportation companies are just bailees entrusted with the responsibility of transporting commodities that are temporarily in their custody without causing harm. Carriers that cause product damage are responsible for the whole or partial value of the damaged goods as specified in the contract or bill of lading. Unless the carrier is able to use a common law defense and place the responsibility on the shipper or the perishability of the goods, it is responsible.

Carriers have a history of offering shippers packaging advice due to the significance of packaging difficulties to transport companies. Inadequately packed freight may be rejected by carriers, and testing may be necessary before packing is deemed acceptable. Some shippers form alliances with their carriers in an effort to save costs and avoid damage.

By method of transportation, dynamic forces differ. Each mode's technological foundation has an impact on the services offered, the economy, and dynamic forces, as well as on the packaging needed for protection, utility, and communication. The main source of in-transit vibration, which often occurs below 25 Hz, is the mechanical foundation of truck transport: pneumatic wheels on pavement. Vertical vibration testing seeks to recreate this force. Also, since transitory impacts may disorganize a load, potholes and other surface discontinuities. Packages should be placed in the trailer at a level height for this purpose. While stopping, starting, and turning pressures are typically mild, they do sometimes need light restraints or TL void fillers. Truck transportation is more rapid than rail transportation due to the prevalence of highways and the fact that each vehicle has a driver. The need for extensive packing to extend shelf life is reduced when a complete TL is delivered door to shop. Refrigerated trailers are often used to transport perishable goods. The cargo is kept intact the whole time in full TL shipments. The shipper may load the trailer in a manner that minimizes harm. Goods transported in complete TLs need the least amount of packaging possible to protect them from impacts since the shipper and consignee handle them in reasonably controlled environments.

A package is relayed from the origin via a number of the carrier's terminals until it is put on the local delivery truck in less-than-truckload shipments, including those used for e-commerce. Due to the relay process, packages are sometimes dropped, frozen, or thawed while being handled in temperature and dynamic circumstances that the shipper cannot control. LTL packing thus requires extra security. LTL packing requires greater protection since packets are jigsaw-consolidated in each additional trailerload, resulting in a variety of product and package stacking configurations. If packaging is unitized-compatible or has ergonomic characteristics, an LTL truck terminal's efficiency may increase. Since that goods may be regularly dropped, kicked, or flung, small parcel carriers need packaging that is both conveyable and very protective. Packages may need to meet performance standards or fit within a certain range of dimensions. LTL products are always labelled with the shipper's and consignee's addresses, but they shouldn't reveal the contents for security reasons.

Transport by truck is more costly than transport by rail and by sea. Optimizing the cubic and/or weight capacity of the trailer has undeniable benefits, and there is a tendency towards making packages as tiny and light as feasible. The biggest opportunity for packaging to provide value to logistics is to increase cube utilization. Transportation efficiency increases by 50% if package size can be cut in half. There are several techniques to decrease package size, including concentrated consumables like orange juice or shipping stacked objects with little head space and dunnage.

For light items that cube out a trailer below its weight limit, like breakfast cereal, cube reduction is crucial. Although trailer sizes vary, a common US dimension is 48 long by 102 wide by 2 inches, with a payload weight restriction of typically about 40 000 pounds. On the other side, large goods might cause a trailer to weigh too much before it is loaded. The value-adding method for such items is to lighten the package weight; for example, switching from glass to plastic bottles greatly improves the number of bottles that may be legally carried in a trailer.

Steel wheels on steel rails, the mechanical foundation of rail transportation, limits train movement to predetermined routes. Vertical vibration is constrained by the rigidity of the wheels and rails, although a propensity for low frequency sidesway may be made worse by staggered rail joints. Railcars are often banged together to engage couplers when trains are put together and taken apart throughout their relay across the nation. Cargo must be properly blocked and braced to prevent damage, or railcar gaps must be filled. Many national railroad organizations have studied rail damage, created tests, and made suggestions about restraints. Rail transportation is more cumbersome than trucking due to set routes, route change procedures, and train timetables. Products could need to be delivered in insulated or refrigerated vehicles, or packaging might need to provide a longer shelf life or better protection from temperature variations. In general, railcars are bigger than trailers and are not restricted by weight. Rail transit is less costly than truck transport, and hence there is less benefit in package cube or weight reduction when transporting by train. The American railways tend to transport greater substantial and durable freight because to the lengthy transit times, hazardous conditions, and absence of weight restrictions; trucks now carries the higher value consumer product cargo.

Overcoming gravity is the technological problem of air travel. As a result, it is the priciest mode of transportation. The size and density of packages have a significant impact on the price of air transport, and every decrease in weight and volume adds value. Aviation transport is quick, and many goods, especially perishables, may be transported with little preservation of shelf life. Air transport, itself, has relatively little dynamic input, save for minor vertical vibration during take-off and landing, and a little high frequency vibration in transit. As certain cargo holds are not pressurized, decompression might be an issue. Abuse of temperature is prevalent.

Packages sent by air must be able to endure truck dynamics since they are constantly picked up and delivered by trucks. They must be protected against collisions, moisture, temperature fluctuations, and stacking with other goods since they are often handled and sometimes outside in inclement weather. The packing specifications are the same as those for LTL shipments, and many small package carriers ship by air. Unitization may lower the cost of damage and handling when there are enough packages being sent. Addresses must be written on packages being sent by air, but the contents shouldn't be indicated to prevent theft. The dynamic forces that ships experience are determined by the technological concept of ocean or river carrier transit, which is gliding over the water. A ship moves in all directions as a result of waves, swells, and storms. The vessel or intermodal container, as well as the packages containing the cargo, must be securely fastened. Packages must also be suitable for rail or truck transportation since waterborne transit often interacts with a land-based transport method. On board a ship, the humidity level is high. Condensation, corrosion, and rot may be brought on by regular day/night cycles and temperature fluctuations in the environment. Use of desiccant sachets or treated films, making sure that packs are well sealed to avoid moisture penetration, and managing the moisture level when packing are some packaging options to resist moisture damage. \

The slowest means of transportation is by sea, where material may be stored while waiting to be sent. Thus, packaging is often needed to extend the shelf life of food goods. Certain intermodal containers include cooling and/or controlled environment capabilities. While cube optimization may result in savings, the cost of ship-loading is the aspect of maritime transportation that is most significantly impacted by packing. A ship's daily expenses while it is at anchor are virtually equal to those when it is at sea. Moreover, break-bulk loading procedures are expensive and time-consuming, and shoremen's handling techniques may lead to significant product damage and injury. Hence, there is a huge incentive to unitize or containerize freight. As intermodal containers may move on any or all of these modes sequentially, they combine the best and worst aspects of the ocean, train, air, and truck modes. The packing requirements for trailer-on-flatcar transportation are similar to those for trucking and combine railroad economics with door-to-door service. Nevertheless, when the trailer is on the flatcar, a second set of springs adds additional dynamics. Ocean transport is often used for container-on-flatcar shipment, which speeds up ship loading but has similar dynamics and shelf life issues as rail and ocean travel. Other combinations, such as air-surface containers, road-railers, roll-on-roll-off ships, and lash barges, have their own distinct operational characteristics and packing potential.

All intermodal transportations share the benefit of not handling separate packages. This lowers handling expenses, negative effects, and travel time. The needs of this voyage must also be taken into account. It should be kept in mind that intermodal containers are often opened abroad and individual goods are sent farther in a break-bulk condition. Flatbeds to bikecarts are among the modes of international transportation. The golden rule for packing protection is to package for the toughest leg of the trip, regardless of whether transportation is by one mode, many modes, or is multimodal.

Storing problems

One may classify conventional warehouse order picking as a packing operation. Large shipments are received in a typical warehouse for consumer items, such as entire TLs or full palletloads. Once orders are chosen, they are broken down into smaller parts, such as shipping containers or consumer goods. In order to be delivered to logistical clients like shops, the orders are subsequently repackaged into mixed loads. Orders may sometimes be so tiny that individual goods must be removed from shipping containers and reboxed before being delivered. Sometimes the delivery package is only a recycled box or pallet filled with a variety of items. Other times, delivery to the shop is done using returnable pallets or totes.

Distribution centers are what modern warehouses are named to underline that they only make money through moving items. Storage is an unproductive asset to a distribution center. Since order picking and material handling are often relatively labor-intensive tasks, warehouse efficiency is crucial. Tracking and maintaining productivity are highly prioritized. Examples of warehouse productivity measurements include cases or orders picked per hour, vehicles loaded or unloaded per hour, and pallets received and stored per hour.

When items are packaged in order amounts and cases don't need to be opened or divided, packaging may increase efficiency in order picking processes. Products should be packaged into fives rather than the conventional case quantities of 12, 24, or 48, for instance, if five is the typical order quantity. With more sensible reasons to indicate additional counts, it is strange that people still pack in the traditional dozens.

Faster order fulfillment is the current distribution trend, and many warehouses are now little more than cross-dock operations. Once supplies arrive, they swiftly put together the orders for mixed loads, or they just move already mixed loads from one manufacturer to delivery trailers. Packaging that is modular and immediately recognizable is more in demand in cross-dock scenarios since it makes mechanical sorting easier.

Yet, some warehouses continue to provide a sizable storage function. When containers are compact and make the most use of cube space, packaging may increase storage efficiency. Most warehouses utilize racks for storage and picking. Palletloads and shipping containers need to be scaled to suit the racks. The layout of the warehouse determines the stacking height and hence the needed compression strength. If racks are employed, the stack height is simply one palletload; otherwise, it may be three to four palletloads high on the floor. The shipping container's strength, the weight of the contents, and the way they are stacked all have an impact on compression strength. Since corrugated fiberboard degrades in the presence of relative humidity and with time, corrugated fiberboard box walls by themselves seldom offer enough compression strength for long-term storage. Stack compression failure destroys the product and poses a safety risk since a falling stack might cause worker injury or death.

The warehouse has the greatest control over temperature and pests, the other two protective aspects. Even if mice and insects may withstand packaging, it is preferable to maintain the warehouse tidy to get rid of their presence. It is essential to establish efficient hygiene and pest control measures. Traps should be placed in important passageways, and spills should be cleaned up right away. Most food storage facilities feature three temperature zones at a minimum: ambient storage for shelf-stable foods and other items, a refrigerated area for fresh food, and a frozen storage section. The need for refrigerated storage has increased due to the availability of more fresh produce choices, freshly cooked meals, dairy products, and bakery goods. Many refrigerated warehouses, particularly those that handle a broad range of fresh produce, have several temperature-controlled rooms so each fruit or vegetable may be kept in the environment that is most beneficial to it. Yet, the majority of warehouse loading docks lack refrigeration, which may seriously compromise the cold chain, particularly if goods are staged on the dock for an extended length of time. While insulation may be added to container, controlling facility temperature is often more effective, particularly in traditional food supply chains. As packages are handled often in warehouses, they must provide impact protection. Also, they must provide protection against stacking and puncture by other kinds of packages since they are often placed into mixed loads for shipping. To make stacking and cube reduction easier, they should be interoperable, if not modular.

Moreover, packaging must make it simple to locate the correct goods while selecting orders. Whether it is read mechanically or manually, a simple to read stock keeping unit identification is necessary. If required, the marks should be clear and visible on all four sides. Advertising messaging shouldn't cover up the brand, size, quantity, or manufacturer's name. When packages are received, they need to be reviewed before being picked up, repacked, and dispatched. A clear package message might help avoid shipping blunders. When it comes to implementing a standard automated identification symbology, cooperation amongst supply chain participants is sometimes missing. Slave pallets and inside stickers with a license plate bar code, magnetic strip, or RFID tag are two packaging options for warehouses. Palletloads may be tracked and their status recorded using the license plate across a single facility.

CHAPTER 8

RETAIL CUSTOMER SERVICE ISSUES

[1]Dr. Amar Shankar, [2]Dr. Venkateshwaran N,
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.amar@jainuniversity.ac.in

During delivery of a package to a supply chain client, such as a store, factory, or contractor, logistics packing must carry out a new set of tasks. The packaging must be simple to open without compromising the contents. Reclosing may be desirable, and handling and unpacking operations should be swift and effective. The product should be simple to recognize, and the packaging may need to provide particular instructions for using and installing the device. The bundle should reduce the cost of disposal for the consumer. Retailers historically had little influence over the packaging they received. Small retail customers had little leverage to propose modifications, while the majority of big manufacturers devised packaging to best fit their own operations. Large merchants, however, who require certain kinds of packaging, are increasingly dominating the food marketing channels. For instance, supermarket chains are increasingly dictating the strength of shipping containers and the information required, banning certain box designs, and assisting their suppliers in redesigning their products to better optimize the use of shipping cubes. Even the consumer packaging is under the hands of certain shops, who market their own brands. Discount retailers often demand that fast-moving goods be packed on waste-free, display-ready, compact pallets. Several businesses require their produce vendors to use standardized reusable containers.

Manufacturers are discovering more often that creating packaging with added retail value may be a profitable sales approach. Every product's packaging has an impact on the retailer's direct product profitability since a retailer's profit is directly correlated to the operational expenses associated with opening packages, presenting items, and selling them. For instance, price marking, check-out, inventory management, and reordering costs may be reduced by using bar codes that allow automated scanning at a retail check-out counter. Collaboration between manufacturers and retailers may increase system-wide profitability since packaging impacts a retailer's productivity.

More display-ready boxes, intelligent labeling, and easy-open features like film wraps or strengthened strips that tear through corrugated fiberboard are the most significant advances in customer service. Simple opening mechanisms may also lessen razor blade damage brought on by customers. The majority of point-of-purchase display cases have attractive graphics that are of a high caliber.

Some shops are even asking for RFID tagging and electronic security gadgets that would enable simultaneous scanning of all the cases in a mixed shipment. Another retail trend is the efficient customer response method, in which suppliers package goods in mixed cases rather than the customary order-picking process used in warehouses. A variety of various SKUs packaged to order may be found in packages. The products are sorted using bar codes onto trailers for direct delivery to retail locations, and they are dispatched via a cross-dock operation run by the retailer. In these situations, package size and markings must support effective sorting and management.

Waste problems

Often, logistics clients like retailers are responsible for covering the expense of shipping container disposal. Apart from the negative effects on the environment, disposal is expensive and may significantly lower a customer's productivity. Businesses have a strong incentive to minimize, reuse, and recycle trash from logistical packaging in order to avoid or lower disposal expenses.

Due to the lack of external costs associated with disposal, consumer packaging waste has become less of a legislative focus than logistical packaging due to this economic incentive. The regulations for logistics packaging vary from those for consumer packaging in Europe, where there is law governing packaging waste. Typically, they lead to a fee being paid by the packer-filler, which helps to pay for a recycling infrastructure and lowers the retailer's disposal expenses.

Beyond disposal costs, each of the three strategies—reducing, reusing, and recycling—has an economic effect. Costs associated with buying packages are decreased by using less packing materials. Reusing packaging often increases expenses for sorting and return shipping but may ultimately result in lower overall package purchase prices. The market for recycled materials is being improved by the expansion of recycling, which is lowering collecting and processing costs. Reusable packaging and recycling trends are advantageous for the environment. As most logistical packaging waste naturally accumulates in large, uniform mounds at the premises of manufacturers, warehouses, and retailers, recycling is an effective method of disposal. Wooden pallets, corrugated fiberboard, polyethylene film, plastic foam, and strapping are the only available materials. Such concentrated and generally clean supplies are welcomed by recyclers. Logistical packaging has a very high recycle rate as a consequence. Similarly, buying packaging made of recycled materials helps the infrastructure and market for recycled goods to expand.

Recycling is also incorrectly referred to as reverse logistics. Actually, the packaging supplies are not returned to the business that filled the packages; rather, the logistical system continues on to preprocessors through waste management firms. Associations of makers of packaging materials have often established their own networks for collection and recycling.

Issues with supply chain integration

Commodities may be used to make food at any point along the supply chain, from the kitchen of the consumer to the facility of the farmer. In this sense, the delay and speculation supply chain principles have always been used to the manufacturing of food. When the food is cooked early in the channel and the packaging is supposed to extend shelf life, speculation techniques demand the most packing. On the other hand, delaying preparation of the meal to the last minute may not call for the packaging to increase the shelf life. Due to the efficiencies of their massive scale, the packages that feed these businesses may likewise vary substantially in size. Customers purchase flour in a significantly different packaging than do food processors or restaurants. Packaging may also be better planned in more integrated supply chains, where operations are coordinated and centrally controlled, to lower system-wide costs. One is more likely to discover store branding, reusable bags, and systematic automated identification systems when supply chains are controlled by a strong client. While looking for ways to save costs, integrated supply chains are more inclined to favor deferral over speculation.

Less integration makes it more likely to suboptimize the system in favor of enhancing a single process. For instance, a broad range of box sizes have historically been employed in the fresh produce market, depending on standard counts and/or the size of the fruit or vegetable. Since the fruit is sold by the standard count and the box may be beautifully painted to advertise the producer's name, this is advantageous for the grower. The difference in box sizes, however, presents a number of challenges for an RDC that chooses a mixed order since they cannot be automatically sorted and palletized and do not fit snugly in the mixed pallet load. The boxes could not easily fit together in a display when they come to the shop.

The merchants have improved supply chain integration as a result of the current trend toward being bigger and more powerful. In order to cut down on their sorting, stacking, and stocking expenses, several of them have also started to insist that their produce suppliers utilize reusable modular bags. Similar to this, food service packaging for vertically integrated chain restaurants is often designed to enhance efficiency and operations in kitchens and distribution centers in addition to integrating with suppliers' operations.

It's crucial to maintain a steady temperature throughout the whole supply chain for many food items. Any break in the cold chain might hasten ripening, degradation, or bacterial development. Transport companies, distribution facilities, and merchants are all responsible for maintaining proper temperature levels, and many of them have quality control procedures in place to guarantee this. The cold chain offers a number of crucial control points in an effective HACCP strategy when food safety is in danger.

Packaging may be used in a few different ways to distinguish between or span warm times. If a shipment has reached a higher temperature than the specified threshold, inexpensive temperature monitor tags may show it. For situations where a temperature control gap is anticipated, insulated packaging and/or frozen gel packs may be employed. They are crucial for food packages in direct delivery and e-commerce, when the circumstances of transportation and delivery cannot be guaranteed. Extreme logistical systems, such as those used by the military and for providing food help in times of crisis, need unique packaging. These packages need to be more durable than those used by businesses since delivery risks are higher, shelf life standards are stricter, and catastrophic loss is a real possibility. It is crucial to maximize handling and transportation productivity. Identifying packages correctly may be the difference between life and death. The necessity to comprehend a system's packaging needs increases with system complexity.

Testing for distribution performance

The protection given by various packages may be tested and com- pared in laboratory and field experiments. Performance testing is performed to evaluate full containers in scenarios that replicate dam-age and mimic distribution risks. Distribution performance tests, which support package design, must be distinguished from material performance testing, which are often used for quality assurance. This chapter does not include quality control testing. Testing for shelf life and permeability, which are discussed in other chapters, are not included either.

The most typical distribution performance tests measure how well packages can endure mechanical forces like shock, vibration, and compression as well as how well they respond to variations in temperature and humidity. Many standardized exams are available. Since 1914, tests for packaging materials and containers have been established by the American Society of Testing and Materials. For foreign users, the International Standards Organization has created comparable tests. With regard to just reshipment testing, the International Safe Transport Association has created a more constrained set of criteria.

The test cycle, which is based on product vulnerability and distribution risks, is one of the most used standards. Impact, vibration, and stacking tests are included in ASTM D4169, ISO 4180, and ISTA's Projects. Japanese and French standards are comparable. European packaging standards are being developed by the TC/261 committee of the Comite European de Normalisation. The product weight and the distribution circumstances used to calculate the test values. Little air freight packages are checked more rigorously than palletized full TL shipments, and international shipments are examined more rigorously than domestic shipments, for instance. Specific package type standardized tests are still another form of test. Examples include ISO 10531, which is a stability test for unit loads, as well as testing for intermediate bulk containers and hardwood product boxes.

Specific performance testing for a certain industry's product and logistics system have been established. These exams are often a modification of a common test. For instance, to guarantee that the handles of paperboard beverage bottle carriers won't rip when wet, the manufacturers created particular jerk tests for them.

Testing for shock and vibration

On a range of testing tools, dynamic testing of full packages may be carried out. The equipment and testing procedures are often determined by the test's objective. Impact testing may be conducted using shock machines or free-fall drop equipment. A shock machine, which is often used for fragility testing, may be used to create repeated impacts but has a larger velocity change for the same drop height due to its rebound. Depending on the machine and the distance of its rebound, the velocity change generated by a shock machine is often two to three times larger than that of a free fall drop for a given drop height. Certain vibration tests, such as those mandated by ISO 2247 and ISTA, are fairly straightforward and are conducted on synchronous machinery with a constant low frequency and high displacement, typically 25 mm. Synchronous vibration tests, also known as vibratory impact or repetitive impact tests, are highly harsh.

The electrohydraulic machinery that can change frequency and displacement is specified by ASTM standards. Sweeping across a frequency range, often between 3 and 100 Hz, is one method used to evaluate packages and products. If an item or stack echoes within the predicted range during transit, further testing is done at that frequency to assess the possibility of damage. Such testing often occurs below 25 Hz and is related to the inherent frequencies of the product, the stack of packages, and the transportation vehicle.

It is a good idea to have a backup plan in case the backup plan fails. Examples of typical test profiles for different transport modalities are provided in ASTM standard D4728. As a consequence, it is possible to assess a product's or package's susceptibility to different truck suspension systems. For instance, special fixtures may be employed to mimic the vibrations felt by the bottom container in a stack.

The horizontal impact test and rotating drum test are less common dynamic test techniques. In order to simulate damage to appliances rolling down an inclined plane from the back of a truck, inclined plane tests were first created. They have been made more generic to model other horizontal effects, such as those caused by train changeover, conveyor jams, and pallet marshaling. A more recent kind of horizontal impact test contains programmable devices that may change the shock length in accordance with the event being reproduced as well as additional controllable factors. The technical community no longer favors the outdated tumbling/revolving drum test since it brutally abuses a package, much like tossing it down an infinite flight of stairs.

In shock and vibration testing, test levels and intensities are crucial since most dynamic testing aims to replicate what is in fact a highly changing environment. How long does a transportation cycle consist of vibration, and what proportion of hits must a package withstand? There is no easy solution.

Before a suitable technique, intensity, and duration can be determined, it is crucial to define the test's goals. Detailed damage information is very helpful for creating package tests. Tests to address particular issues are often made to mimic the package's unique harm. Instead of just passing or failing, characteristics—for example, the way that bags' ends burst in side drops—provide a measure of the performance of various packages, i.e., how much input energy is needed to cause a burst. Dynamic testing examines the pressures that packages experience during handling and transit. Also, during storage, packages must endure stacking forces that are simulated in laboratories.

Compression examination

As the walls of boxes are often required to support the weight of a stack, the majority of compression testing research has been done on corrugated fiberboard boxes. Corrugated fiberboard box compression strength is known to be influenced by a number of variables, including material qualities, board combining technique, box dimensions, manufacturing flaws, internal partitions, temperature, humidity, stacking/loading technique, and time.

Nonetheless, it should be emphasized that typically the item within the box aids in supporting the piled burden. It's a good idea to have a backup plan in case anything goes wrong. There are two different test kinds. Until a test machine fails, ASTM D642 and ISO 12048 apply an increasing load. Using a test machine or a straightforward fixed equipment, ASTM D4577 and ISO 2234 apply a steady load for a predetermined amount of time. everal food producers have discovered that clamp-truck side-to-side compression damage is a frequent cause of damage. They created sideways compression tests in response.

Compression tests on corrugated fiberboard are typically carried out at normal temperatures of 23°C and 50% relative humidity because corrugated fiberboard loses a lot of strength when it becomes wet. Nevertheless, it could also be necessary to test boxes in high humidity levels or to prepare them before testing.

Systems and materials for packaging

The typical components and methods for logistics packing are rather straightforward. They consist of pallets, stretch film, corrugated fiberboard boxes, shrink-film bundles, and reusable totes. The characteristics and forms of each are discussed in this section, along with examples of typical applications for each.

Fiberboard corrugated boxes

Boxes made of corrugated fiberboard are widely recognized for being affordable, easily accessible, and having high stacking strength. The standard slotted container and shipping containers are both most often made of corrugated fiberboard. The flutes on the load-bearing panels of a well-designed box should run vertically for stacking strength, parallel to the direction of the expected load. The flutes running horizontally may be preferable when side-to-side strength is more crucial. Both technically and logistically, corrugated fiberboard is simple to recycle. Factory, warehouse, and retail businesses—which have an incentive to recycle to save disposal costs—typically dispose used boxes in large, uniform heaps. Corrugated board has a very high recycling rate as a consequence. Since over a century ago, corrugated fiberboard has been utilized to create transport containers. The majority of nations now use a set of common grades. It is divided into three categories based on the fluted medium's thickness and spacing, the weight of the facings, and the kind of paper employed.

Shrink wrap

Shipping containers with shrink bundles are becoming more and more common for goods that don't need the corrugated fiberboard's compression strength. A corrugated fiberboard tray is used to stage the items, such as cans or bottles. The array is then wrapped in a thin layer of film, such as linear low density polyethylene film, and transported through a shrink tunnel to tighten the wrap. As comparison to a similar corrugated fiberboard shipping container, a shrink bundle has the benefits of being more affordable and using less material. It is debatable if there is further harm. Indeed, a shrink package offers less actual protection. But, since the handlers can see what's inside, they often handle the item more carefully and inflict less harm. Together with the stretch film and plastic bags that are also discarded by warehouses, manufactures, and merchants, LLDPE shrink-film and fiberboard are also readily recyclable.

Reusable bags

The usage of multi-trip packaging has increased in tandem with rising disposal costs and some nations' addition of incentives for trash minimization. The most frequent use are for ingredient shipments between plants, for storage totes between retail warehouses, and for transporting fresh produce from the farm to the shop shelf. While some businesses reuse hardwood boxes, corrugated fiberboard boxes, and pallet boxes, the majority of reusable packaging is made of plastic. One characteristic unites the majority of the expanding reusable packaging applications: a short, efficient supply chain with consistent predicted demand. The main players are either linked by corporate ownership, agreements, partnerships, or management under the direction of one business. Since reusable container movement must be regulated and benefits must be shared, effective supply chain management is crucial. To optimize container utilization, all participants in a reusable system must work together, and coordination and control need an explicit connection. Containers are readily misplaced or lost if not. To reduce the investment in the container pool and the expense of return transportation, the shipping cycle should be brief in both time and space. Since the number of containers required depends on the number of days in the cycle, particularly during peak demand, the demand for goods should be consistent with minimum volatility.

Making the decision to purchase reusable packaging is considerably different from making the decision to buy disposable containers. Many packers are inclined to just consider the cost savings on disposable containers when defending the purchase. The investment indicated by the number of packages in the cycle, as well as the expenses of handling, sorting, monitoring, cleaning, and maintaining the container pool, should be weighed against the purchase and disposal costs for consumables when making the selection. Consideration should be given to intangible advantages including increased ergonomics, better cube use, and less damage in factories.

Retailers that have been using reusable bags for produce in the UK for more than ten years have found that they end up with the majority of the savings. Their reusable totes' modular standardization enables automated container sorting in a distribution facility. More orderly mixed loads are facilitated by modularization. The fruit is exhibited in the totes, which speed in-store retail operations since an empty tote can be immediately replaced with a full one.

There is growing interest in outsourcing the management, logistics, and/or ownership of reusable containers due to the challenges associated with container management. Container pool agencies, which oversee participant organization, cost assessment, exchange process management, container inventory management, cleaning and repair, fee assessment, and tracking, are a growing sector of the economy. The participants may own the containers or the third party may only rent them to them. In both Europe and the US, certain pools have found success in the fresh produce and mixed grocery channels. In order to collect the empties at a fair price, these third-party service providers may achieve economies of scale to support a network of depots and cars.

Unitization

While the materials used for unitization might vary, a pallet or other platform is often employed. Pallets made of wood predominate. Despite the growing popularity of alternatives built of plastic or fiberboard, the adaptability, reusability, and repairability of the hardwood pallet cannot be equaled. In food distribution routes, where forklifts are used for most handling, wooden pallets are pervasive.

The majority of pallets used in the food business are recycled, with varied degrees of success depending on how they were made. The cost and durability are greatly influenced by the wood species selection. The durability and price of wood increase as it becomes denser and more rigid. Hardwoods are utilized to make the most expensive and long-lasting pallets, which are leased out as a component of pallet pools.

Pallets may be made with entry points on two or all four sides. Blocks in the corners and centers or stringers running from front to back may serve as the vertical members. Decking may be present simply on the top or on both faces. When palletloads are doublestacked, decking on both sides is advised to distribute the weight of the top load more equally over the bottom one. The number of horizontal planks on a deck might vary. Boxes may bend creating wide gaps, which can lead to harm. Racks, carts, and slipsheets are additional platforms. Orders are often delivered from a warehouse to a retailer using carts and racks. Since the loads are combined, they may include shelving and restraining systems to reduce damage.

A slipsheet is a lightweight fiberboard or plastic sheet that serves as a flexible base. They are used because of their affordability and little cube utilization. Therefore, both the shipper and the consignees must utilize specialized handling equipment. The sheet is raised onto a polished steel platform by a unique lift truck connection and then carried forward by the lift truck. The attachment pushes the weight off the platform and sets it down. An additional unique piece of gear is a clamp truck. It takes hold of a load between platens and squeezes it tightly enough to enable it to raise the weight as a whole and transport it in its clamps. This is used for unit loads of light, robust goods like boxes of morning cereal and toilet paper.

It is important to note that shippers that want to avoid the expense and bulk of pallets often utilize slipsheet and clamp handling. Nevertheless, many wholesalers and RDCs lack the specialist equipment needed to accept the cargo and can only handle traditional pallets with their forklifts. This has negative effects and is ineffective. In a highly connected supply chain where all parties can be convinced to apply the same handling techniques, such specialized sorts of unit loads are best used.

The materials that may be utilized to limit a unit load are many. The most popular kind is stretchwrap. Stretchwrap may be used mechanically or manually applied. The most popular mechanical approach is a stretchwrapper that turns the load while a roll of film is played out up and down the load in a spiral pattern. Order pickers wrap mixed shipments as they stage them in warehouses, where manual applications are often encountered. Regardless of the technique, the weight should be wrapped as tightly and thinly as feasible without being crushed.

Shrink wrap, strapping, and adhesives are some additional unit load restraint materials. As shrinkwrapping costs more energy than stretchwrapping, it is less common. It is mostly used as a thick covering for unit loads intended for outdoor storage. A minimal amount of stability is added when strapping or tape is wrapped around the top two layers of a load. While pallet stabilizer glue used between layers of boxes provide the boxes incredible resilience, lifting the boxes makes them readily burst apart. In situations where they do not harm the shipping container's outside surface or where such damage is not a concern, tape and adhesives should be utilized. The size of the shipping containers often dictates the pallet arrangement. There should be no unused space or underhang to enhance the efficiency of transport and handling; overhang should also be avoided since it harms the product. Designing shipping containers to better meet the footprint might increase cubic efficiency. For example, although most food pallets in the US are 40 by 48 inches, most in Europe adhere to the ISO norm of 1200 by 1000 inches. The two standards vary by less than an inch, and the same pallet designs may be utilized for a given box's size. Given the dimensions of shipping containers, a variety of computer algorithms are available for optimizing a pallet pattern. Given the dimensions or volume of a product, they may also be utilized to optimize the size of the shipping container as well as the main goods within. Sometimes, a little dimensional adjustment might lead to significant transportation cost savings. Programs for pallet cube optimization have been shown to be particularly helpful for exports, fast-moving consumer items, and long-distance shipments, where transport savings may rapidly build up.

Steel cans

Estimates put the annual global market for metal containers at 410 billion units. Of this, 320 billion are beverage cans and 75 billion are cans of processed food. The remaining items are aerosol and other cans. There are drink cans for both carbonated and non-carbonated drinks, many of which go through the pasteurization process.

Performance requirements for containers

If the contents of metal packaging for food goods are to be supplied to the final consumer in a safe and complete way, they must carry out the following essential functions:

1. Maintain and safeguard the product.
2. Resist the product's chemical effects
3. Withstand the conditions of handling and processing
4. Withstand the environmental conditions outside
5. The capacity to essentially exchange with comparable items from other supply sources and possess the proper dimensions
6. Having the necessary shelf display features available at the time of sale
7. Provide simple/safe product removal and easy opening.
8. Be made from basic resources that are recyclable.

) the the a the the, the subject of this article, will be the subject of an upcoming event, and will be the subject of an upcoming event the. To extend the shelf life of the product, most full food and beverage containers for ambient shelf storage are heated in some way. This often provides a shelf life of up to 2-3 years or more for food cans. Because of how intense the heat processes utilized to do this are, the containers must be properly made to resist these temperature and pressure cycles in a steam/water environment. There will typically be a vacuum within the can after heat processing after the can temperature has recovered to ambient. Under these circumstances, the food product does not provide the can any strength to withstand external stresses.

When a can of carbonated beverage, which makes up the majority of drink cans filled, is closed, the carbonation pressure continues to significantly support the can physically until it is opened. Nitrogen gas may be utilized to provide the appropriate internal pressure for the stiffness and compression strength of thin-walled Storage containers when it comes to still liquids like juices, juice drinks, and wine.

Container types

The forms of metal containers are particularly important to their cost, physical performance, and compatibility with the loaded product, regardless of the specific can-forming technique utilized.

The cost of the metal itself accounts for 50–70% of the price of the majority of metal food and drink containers. The most important cost component is consequently the quantity of metal in any given container, which is influenced by the metal's thickness, temper, and surface area. Metal thickness in can design is based on the physical performance required for handling, processing, and storing the full container. The volume contents and the container's selected form define its surface area. Most food and drink cans have a circular cross shape for simplicity of production, handling, filling, and closing. Cans, however, may range in height from short to tall depending on physical performance, price, and product usage.

For baked food items, open trays with round or non-round sections are utilized, or trays with lids are used as take-out food containers. Powder items are packaged in circular cans with lever lids and diaphragm seals, such as dry milk, instant coffee, and baby formula.

Can closure systems for food and beverages must must operate in quite distinct ways. Although drink cans have an aperture that is tailored to the technique of consumption, food cans need an aperture that is either the whole or nearly the entire interior diameter of the container through which to extract the foodstuff. The basic lid of food cans has always needed to be removed with a can-opening tool. Full aperture easy-open ends have been created more recently based on designs initially utilized for beverage items. The end panel for almost all food and drink cans is mechanically seamed-on to generate a double seam that is capable of withstanding all the heat-processing cycles in use, whether plain or easy-open ends are employed. If excessive pressure is given to the retort to lessen the expansion strain on the foil membrane, heat-sealing of foil lids onto metal containers may also tolerate entire heat process cycles. For less demanding items, other pack sealing techniques often employed incorporate screw top closures with wads or sealant material to provide acceptable performance.

Resources needed to make cans

Metal food and beverage container and closing construction is done using steel and aluminum. Both are reasonably inexpensive materials that are non-toxic, have a sufficient amount of strength, and can be work-hardened.

Low-carbon steel, which is first manufactured as blackplate, is used in steel. For the production of containers and closures, this is subsequently transformed into tinplate or steel without tin.

Tinplate is made by electrolytically applying a thin layer of tin on black plate. To accommodate the product that is inside packed and the outside environment, the tin is thickly covered on both sides of the plate. Each side of the plate may have tin coated in varying thicknesses. Tin, when sufficiently thickly plated, offers steel considerable corrosion resistance and is suitable for direct contact with various items, including particular foods like white fruits and certain tomato-based products.

To provide an inert barrier between the metal and the product packed, it is required to coat the inside surfaces of the tinplate container with an organic material for the majority of meals and beverages. This barrier works to stop chemical reactions between the product and the container and to stop the product from being contaminated or stained when it comes into touch with the metal. During welding procedures, the tin surface helps to provide excellent electrical current flow. Due to its extreme softness, it also serves as a solid lubricant for creating two-piece cans with thin walls.

TFS is made by electrolytically coating blackplate with a thin layer of chrome/chrome oxide, also known as electrolytic chromium/chrome oxide coated steel. To fully produce a corrosion-resistant surface, this must subsequently be covered with an organic compound. An excellent key for the adherence of liquid coatings or laminates to the surface is provided by the metallic layer of the ECCS. Tinplate is often somewhat more costly than ECCS. It does not, however, create a reflecting surface like tinplate since it is a matt surface after being coated with clear lacquer. In its usual state, ECCS is not suitable for welding without first removing the coating of chrome/chrome oxide. The modified tin-free metallic coatings for steel that the Japanese steel producers have created do allow for acceptable welding of this material.

Aluminum is used in relatively pure form for light metal packing, with the addition of manganese and magnesium to increase the strength qualities. This material can only be used for seamless containers and cannot be welded by car-making machinery. Due to the materials that are often placed within aluminum containers, the inside surfaces are constantly covered in an organic lacquer.

Metal packaging is recycled.

Metal producers are happy to remelt packing materials made of steel or aluminum. Via third-party retailers, waste products generated during the can-making operations may be returned for recycling. After being automatically separated from other waste components, post-consumer metal packaging trash is collected and eventually sent back to the metal makers for remelting. Aluminum and steel may be recycled indefinitely to create high-quality packaging material since they don't lose any quality throughout the remelting process. Prior to remelting, certain recycling techniques allow the tin to be removed from the steel foundation.

Can-making techniques

Cans for food and beverages may be made in either a three- or a two-piece design. Three-piece cans are made up of two parts: a cylindrical body that has been rolled from a flat piece of metal and has a longitudinal seam; and two can ends that have been seamed onto each end of the body. Due to the fact that practically any feasible combination of height and diameter may be produced, the three-piece can manufacturing method is exceedingly versatile. Since it is very easy to modify the equipment to produce cans of varied dimensions, this technique is especially well suited for producing cans with a variety of requirements. Flexible container sizes make it easier to conduct pack promotions that give away additional goods for free.

Two-piece cans are created by reshaping a metal disc into a cylindrical shape with an integrated end to create a seamless container. A loose end has been added to this to seal the deal. Drawing is the process of reshaping sheet metal while keeping its thickness constant. Re-drawing is the process of transforming a two-piece can into one with a smaller diameter and, thus, a larger height, but leaving the thickness untouched. DRD cans are a common abbreviation for drawn and redrawn containers. A two-piece can's wall is thinned during the ironing process by being run through hardened circular dies. The draw and wall ironing technique is exceptionally cost-effective for producing cans with a height larger than a diameter, and it is especially well suited for producing many cans with the same basic specifications.

CHAPTER 9

COMPONENT OF METAL CANS

[1]Dr. Shwetha M.S, [2]Dr. Adarsha H
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]ms.shwetha@jainuniversity.ac.in

Food cans that have been three-piece welded are exclusively made of steel since aluminum cannot be joined using this method. Upon delivery from the steel manufacturer, coils of steel are chopped into sheets that are around 1 m2 in size. The surfaces of the cut sheets are then coated and, if required, embellished with printing. On the can body, the areas where the weld will be produced are left uncoated or unprinted to guarantee that the weld is always strong. The sheets are typically passed through a thermally heated oven with a temperature range of 150-205 C to dry the coatings and inks. UV-sensitive materials may also be used for certain non-food contact applications. The moist coating or ink is immediately cured by exposing it to a UV light.

The sheets are then cut into tiny, separate blanks, one for each can body, and rolled into cylinders with the two longitudinal edges overlaid by about 0.4 mm on each side. By pressing the two edges together and running an alternating electric current across the two metal thicknesses, the two edges are joined. This suitably warms and softens the metal to allow for the creation of a sound joint. To guarantee coating continuity throughout the whole can when the can is internally lacquered, it is often essential to apply a repair side stripe lacquer coat to the inside of the weld.

The top and bottom of the can body for food cans are now flanged outward to receive the can ends as they pass through a flanging machine. Before the flanges are made, the top and bottom edges of drink cans are necked-in to lower the diameter. This makes it possible to accommodate ends with a smaller diameter than the can body, lowering the cost of the end and the amount of space the seamed can takes up.

The bottom of the can body is then mechanically seamed-on to one end for both food and beverage cans. The maker's end is the common name for this end. It is customary to install the easy-open end of three-piece cans at this stage rather than the plain end, which is often fitted after filling. The final can testing procedure may be completed with the seamed easy-open end thanks to this approach. The canner's end is the term used to describe the end that was attached by the packer/filler following can filling.

Tall food cans are sent through a beading machine at this point, when the body wall has beads made into the circumference of it. The beads contribute to the hoop's strength to keep the can from collapsing during successive heat-process cycles. After passing through an air pressure tester, all cans are eventually rejected if they have pinholes or other flaws. The production of empty three-piece food and beverage cans is now complete.

Single-drawn and multiple-drawn two-piece cans

A reciprocating press that may have one or more tools feeds pre-coated, laminated, and printed tinplate, also known as TFS, in sheet or coil form. The press cycle cuts a circular disc from the metal at each tool station and pulls it into a shallow container while still at that station. The metal is transformed throughout the drawing process from flat metal into a three-dimensional container without affecting the metal thickness anywhere. The can could already be at its final size after only one pull. This cup, however, may be redrawn into a can with a smaller diameter and a larger height using a similar method and different equipment to create a draw-redraw can. To reach the highest height possible, this procedure may be performed once more. The can base and wall thickness are almost unaltered from their flat metal counterparts at each of these processes. Depending on the final use and the can's height to diameter ratio, necking, flanging, and beading processes are performed after this body-forming operation.

A light-testing equipment is used to identify pinholes and cracks on completed cans for all two-piece cans. This uses intense external lighting to quantify the quantity of light that is going through the can wall. Two-piece cans have the benefit of having just one can end rather than two, removing one significant key control danger point.

To create shallow trays with tapering edges made of steel or aluminum that will eventually be heat-sealed with coated metal foil, single drawing is also employed. Metal is coated with organic film to create the container bodies. For further information, see the website. When the metal is transformed from a flat sheet into a shaped container, it is permissible for the aluminum to fold throughout this process.

The DWI cans are made of aluminum or tinplate that is not coated. The cans for processed food are only manufactured of tinplate, however, since thin-walled aluminum cans lack the strength to sustain repeated heating and cooling cycles.

During this procedure, the unwound coil of metal is coated with a tiny layer of synthetic lubricant that is water soluble before being fed continuously through a cupping press. As mentioned above in the section headed "drawn cans," this machine blanks and draws several shallow cups per each stroke. After being put through parallel body-making machines, the cups are transformed into tall cans. In this drawing and ironing procedure, the cups are first redrawn to the final can diameter and then pushed through a succession of rings with interior surfaces made of tungsten carbide, which thins the can walls while also heightening the can. The can body is saturated with the same kind of lubricant utilized in the cupping operation during this procedure. The lubricant not only speeds up the ironing process but also cools the can body and removes any metallic particles. The only heat produced during this procedure is from the metal being cold worked while it is being thinned; no heat is applied to the container. When the can body has been formed, the can's uneven top edge is cut off, leaving a smooth edge and a can with the right overall height. Can bodies that have been cleaned with chemicals are then dried. By this procedure, all traces of lubricant are eliminated, and the metal surfaces are prepared for internal and external coating as well as exterior ornamentation.

Food cans are given an exterior coating by being run through a succession of waterfalls of clear lacquer, which protects the surface against corrosion, before receiving a paper label. The cans are placed in a warm oven to dry the lacquer. The can body then moves on to a flanging machine where the can's top is flanged outward to accommodate the can end, which will be inserted once the can is filled with goods. The flanged can is then put through a beading machine to improve strength by creating beads around the perimeter of the can wall. Each can is inspected by passing through a light tester after all mechanical forming procedures have been finished; any cans with pinholes or fractures are instantly rejected by the tester. Next, using an airless spray system, lacquer is applied to the inside of each can. The can is coated with the special lacquer to shield it from corrosion and stop the contents from coming into contact with the metal. Finally, this lacquer is cured at a temperature of roughly 210°C in a thermal oven.

Drink cans have a clear or coloured base coat applied outside to provide a nice surface for the printing inks. The cans are then placed in a thermally heated oven to dry the coating. The printed pattern is then applied around the exterior of the can wall using a high-speed printer/decorator in up to eight colors plus a lacquer. In order to provide protection against scuffing during distribution and exterior corrosion, a strong varnish called a "rim-coater coat" is applied to the base of each can. This is important since such items are often stored in the chilly, humid conditions of chilled freezers. The ink and varnish are now dried on the cans in a second oven. With the use of an airless spray system, lacquer is applied to the inside of each can.

The can is coated with the special lacquer to shield it from corrosion and stop the contents from coming into contact with the metal. Finally, this lacquer is cured in an oven set at a temperature of around 210°C. The can body then moves on to a necker/flanger machine where the top wall's diameter is initially decreased before the top edge is flanged outward to accommodate the can end. After the completion of all mechanical forming procedures, each can is examined by being run through a light tester, which immediately rejects any cans with pinholes or fractures.

End-making processes

Aluminum, tinplate, or TFS are the materials used to make can ends for mechanical double seaming. When the metal is still in coil or flat sheet form, aluminum and TFS are always coated on both sides with an organic lacquer or a laminated film. Depending on the product being stored in the container and the stipulated external climatic conditions, several coatings are optional for tinplate.

A three-piece can's bottom will always be a simple end. The top of food cans can be either simple or easy to open with a complete hole. The scored body part and ME are separated using a key opening mechanism in rectangular solid beef cans. In order to allow the opening tab and pierce-open end part to be maintained on the can, the top of drink cans is often referred to as a Stay-on Tab. The conventional ring-pull end has mostly been replaced with the SOT end.

The center panel section of processed food cans has many round beads to enhance flexibility. They enable the panel to slide outward because they lower the can's final pressure since internal pressure is created within the can during the heating step of the process. Its elasticity enables the center panel to return to its initial position throughout the cooling process. Can ends for beer and carbonated beverages do not need the aforementioned characteristic since the internal pressure of the can is always positive. In order to prevent can ends from peaking or distorting, the plate thickness and temper must match the product's amount of carbonation and, if required, pasteurization treatment.

Simple food can ends and easy-open ends for food and drink cans are made using the same fundamental methods. A shell is the portion of an end that will eventually be changed into an easy-open end. Plain ends or shells may be stamped straight from large metal coils or from coil-cut sheets.

Metal is put through a press that creates many stampings for each stroke, whether it comes from a coil or a sheet. The edges of the end shells are then gently curved over after being removed from the shaping tool to help with the last step of mechanically seaming the end onto the flange of the filled can. The end shells are put through a lining machine to apply a bead of liquid lining compound around the inside of the curl after they have been curled. During mechanical forming, the compound lining, which is a robust substance, will flow into the double seems cracks and create a hermetic seal.

End shells are changed to easy-open ends

Both full aperture food easy-open ends and small aperture drink easy-open ends are converted using the same methods. The conversion procedures include scoring the opening panel's perimeter and installing a metal tab that may be used to rip the panel apart.

It is a good idea to have a backup plan in place in case the backup plan fails. Before the tab can be attached to the end shell, the strip must first be punctured and sliced. After that, it must go through two further steps of formation. The shells are sent through a sequence of dies, which score them and create a hollow, upright rivet in the shell's center panel. The rivet on the shell is then covered by the tab, and it is bent to create a junction between the two parts. The final ends are placed into paper sleeves and palletized for transport to the can filler where they will be prepared for capping the filled cans.

Film laminates, inks, and coatings

Metal containers and closures may have ornamental or protective coatings made of organic compounds. They might take the shape of film laminates or liquid-applied coatings and inks. Before to the can or end forming procedures, the metal is coated and printed while it is flat, in coil or sheet form, for three-piece cans, two-piece drawing containers, and can ends. All coating and ornamentation is done after the can body has been manufactured for two-piece drew and wall-ironed containers.

Roller coating is the only method used to cover metal coils or sheets. In order to apply a coating to the inside of the weld region after the body has been created for three-piece welded cans with an internal coating, it is often essential. Spraying powder or liquid or roller coating might be used for this.

Two-piece DWI cans have their inside surfaces covered with airless spray. Lacquer coatings may include flaws like micro-channels, micro-cracks, or fissures that allow metallic ions to migrate to the object even if they act as a barrier to metal pick-up. Conductivity tests made with an electrolyte solution may be used to determine the extent of metal exposure in a lacquered DWI can. The exterior surface of DWI food cans, where paper labels are often placed, is flood coated with clear lacquer with the can tilted up. A roller is used to apply an optional exterior coating to beverage cans. This is often white and is used to highlight the can ornamentation.

These goods may be metal printed onto flat sheets or circular cans, depending on the situation. Offset lithography or dry offset are the methods in use. Depending on the specific chemistry of the material, inks and coatings are designed for either thermal oven or UV light curing.

Processing of beverages and food in metal containers

The creation of the whole spectrum of food and drink goods that are placed in metal containers is beyond the purview of this book. While similar process phases may be assumed, this section concentrates on the manufacture of meals and beverages in cans rather than, for instance, aluminum trays. The paper discusses phases that are likely to be shared by many processes, emphasizing generally accepted best practices whenever a process confronts a container. Before use, it is advisable to establish with the provider if a certain can and end are appropriate for the intended use. The working relationship with the supplier determines the amount of inspection of containers and terminates when they are delivered to the food/drink packer. Several established packaging businesses depend on certificates of compliance rather than conducting inspections. Although some packers utilize statistical sampling strategies, others carry out inspections in accordance with long-established practice, such as a tiny sample every bulk delivery.

Each delivery of cans, such as a pallet, has to be labeled in order to be able to track it back to the manufacturing lot. Can bodies with inkjet labeling help with traceability. Using can lots in the manufacturing sequence is a smart idea since it makes it simpler to put the whole lot on hold when problems are discovered during packaging. A lot of cans should also have their time of use documented so that, in the event of a flaw discovered after packing, the affected final product may be recalled.

Both filling and draining

To reduce the chance that secondary packaging would contaminate the food, cans should be depalletized outside of locations where food is produced. In regions where food is produced, close to the seamers for cans, it is typical to see sleeves' ends cut off, yet this is not the ideal procedure. Before filling, cans need to be cleaned and flipped over. While uniformity is crucial for the container's performance throughout subsequent production steps, filling should be done precisely. The can shouldn't be harmed throughout the procedure either. The product shouldn't be filled in a way that makes it impossible to put the end of the can on it. The container and the region around the flange should not be exposed to outside pollution. The creation of the seam upon closure may be impacted by food contamination of can flanges. It may be challenging to prevent product from overlapping the flange when canning tiny fish, shredded beetroot, and bean sprouts, for example, in certain industrial sectors where contamination of the flange is a problem. To reduce the likelihood that such cans may be seamed, manufacturing controls should be in place, such as pre-seamer visual inspection.

Also, it is crucial that filling leaves a sufficient headspace since this might affect the ultimate vacuum level and lower internal pressure on can ends during heating and cooling. Cans may be hot-filled with the product and sealed with or without direct steam injection into the headspace during double seaming, filled with the product, then exhausted before double seaming, or sealed in a vacuum chamber in order to create a vacuum. Filled cans are exhausted by being moved through a steam-heated chamber that is about 90°C. Exhausting helps ensuring that a proper vacuum level is reached, removes trapped air from the product before heat processing, and raises the product's beginning temperature. The chosen closure technique—either, or—is dependent on a variety of factors, including cost, product properties, manufacturing effectiveness, and needed vacuum levels.

For canned goods, a completed can vacuum between 10 and 20 in.Hg is typical. Other levels, however, of between 0 and 6 in.Hg or 26 in.Hg for high vacuum packs, such as sweet corn in a little brine, may be seen for containers with minimal headspace. The resulting vacuum has several uses. For certain packs, it is necessary to precisely regulate the vacuum level to avoid container damage from gas expansion during the sterilisation process. The propensity of the product to expand, especially owing to trapped or dissolved air in the product, and the sensitivity of the container, such as cans with easy-open ends or weak plates, will determine how serious of a problem this is. After seaming, the can vacuum will be frequently checked where pack damage is prone to occur.

The existence of a vacuum in food cans has traditionally been taken as a sign that the contents are safe from pack leakage and spoiling. Because to this, dud-detection systems may sometimes identify vacuum loss as a pack failure warning before the completed product is labeled. With a rotary filler and seamer, 2000 DWI cans of carbonated beverage can be filled each minute. To obtain the proper degree of carbonation in the beverage and prevent excessive foaming, which causes significant spillage and waste owing to underfilled cans and high levels of air in cans, pressure control is crucial. While the goal is a positive pressure in the completed pack, the pressure control goals for beverage and beer cans are quite different from those for food cans. Yet it's important to keep demands from becoming too high. De-aerating components and employing low filling temperatures for control increase the carbonation's stability. There is a chance of exterior condensation occurring after closure when low filling temperatures are used.

There is a balance between the force needed to hold the can against the filling head for carbonated drinks and the force needed to contain pressures created during filling. To reduce external carry-over of food/drink components that may contribute to container corrosion at a later production step, such as acid syrups or brine, effective cleaning of cans is often necessary following double seaming.

Seaming

The double seam closure is the most significant form of closure used for metal containers. The curl of the can end and the flange of the can body are used to create the seam in two steps. The functioning of the can seamer is crucial to the process safety of foods that have undergone heat processing, and it is often recognized as a vital control point in a hazard analysis for such goods. The can seamer's proper configuration for sealing the can is the control. Periodic visual inspections will be used to keep an eye on this crucial control point. For instance, taking measurements from cut portions or seam tear-downs every 30 minutes. While the safety dangers are less severe for beverage cans, seam faults can still have a substantial financial impact, thus requirements are still quite high. After jams where cans were caught in the seamer, further checks need to be done. A successful operation needs qualified personnel to operate and maintain the seamers as well as judge the quality of the seams. Although the can manufacturer should ideally disclose seam specs, sometimes internal standards are employed. General seam standards are offered from organizations like the Metal Packaging Manufacturers Association to help with comparisons across vendors. These provide seam parameters and make clear the ones that are important for accep able seams. The following criteria would make up a typical list in the UK:

1. Size of the seams
2. Seam depth
3. Overlap
4. Free Room
5. Body hook butting % tightness or wrinkle rating.

In order to ensure that there is enough overlap and that the five layers of metal are tightly crushed together, these parameters measure how far the hook generated by the can body flange folds into the hook created by the end curl. Different criteria could be emphasized in various regions of the globe. For instance, in the USA, body hook butting is often disregarded in favor of overlap and the existence of a clearly discernible pressure ridge. While seamer tooling and can suppliers may be somewhat interchanged, it is still a good idea to review seamer performance when changes are anticipated.

Taking many portions is typical when evaluating a seam. The weld is considered to be at 12 o'clock for cans with welded or soldered side seams, and pieces are normally taken between 2 and 10 o'clock, which is traditionally where most issues arise. Two points that are opposite one another are utilized for drawing cans. A larger number of pieces are chosen for more complicated forms that are harder to seam, such as a rectangular can's two long sides and all four corners. To rapidly identify and fix drift or step changes in values, it is a good idea to create control charts for the crucial seam parameters.

Procedure of heating

As they are lower than those used in can manufacture, the temperatures to which cans are subjected during the pasteurization and sterilization of food and beverages won't often be a limiting issue. Yet, containers might struggle in a retort due to the temperature and mechanical conditions there.

A globally renowned source of guidance on thermal process assessment for a variety of heat preserved foods is the Campden & Chorleywood Food Research Association. Yet in order to determine the ideal process time and temperature ranges, in-plant heat penetration experiments on canned goods are always required.

Internal pressure that develops during the heating process of sterilizing or pasteurizing cans may be sufficient to induce deformation of the can or the opening of easy-open scores on the ends of the can. The pressure difference between the process media and the inside of the container is largest at these times, for instance while switching from heating to cooling. The design of cans allows for the pressure created during typical food processing processes, however this still depends on the heating equipment operating well to prevent severe pressure differentials. With a standard batch steam retort, for instance, it is typical for the operator to add both compressed air and water to the retort when cooling begins. This way, as the steam contracts, the air provides the external pressure to keep the container from expanding. Batches of cans will suffer considerable damage, known as peaking or paneling, if the air pressure profile is not properly controlled. The right pressure must also be maintained via transfer valves in continuous sterilisation systems like reel and spiral retorts, which operate between pressurized shells.

Layers of cans can be loaded into a basket, often onto a fake bottom that descends with subsequent layers, or cans may be scramble packed when using batch heat processing equipment. Due of container-container collisions, scramble packing typically poses more issues to the container than layered loading. By placing the baskets in a water tank, these consequences may be lessened. Layers of cans must be secured into baskets using a pneumatic or mechanical press in rotary batch retort systems to avoid movement during the heating process that might cause impacts or scuffing. Yet, the necessity to prevent crushing of any component of the load must be weighed against the goal to restrict mobility.

Due to the possibility of electrochemical interactions between equipment and containers via process water, the heated environment might make it more difficult to avoid exterior container corrosion. Saturated steam retorts must be adequately vented in order to eliminate air that might cause under-processing owing to inefficient heat transmission or, more significantly, exterior corrosion of cans. Moreover, corrosion may be impacted to some extent by the transfer of boiler chemicals into the retort. Older retorts often have mild steel construction, which corrodes over time and leaves rust particles on cans at the conclusion of the heating process, adding to corrosion issues on containers. Since the cans are rolled on their seams during processing, certain plant and retort designs are innately harmful to the lacquers on can ends. Packers' use of embossed codes may also compromise corrosion protection and can integrity. Cans of beverages that need to be pasteurized are commonly heated in tunnel pasteurizers, however hot filling may also work.

Can chilling, drying, and labeling during post-processing:

To lower the danger of microbial recontamination, sterilized food containers must be dried after cooling. Cans that hold food or beverages should be dried before storing to avoid exterior container corrosion?

It is commonly known that can double seams may not settle entirely right away after heat processing, and that very minute amounts of water may be drawn back through the seams (a process known as micro-suction). Food illness or deterioration may result from recontamination if water that enters the can contains germs. This risk may be reduced by using high-quality seams, maintaining sterile conditions right after after sterilization, and drying containers. Using cooling water containing biocides, such as free chlorine, is one way to reduce the danger of microbial recontamination, albeit amounts should be kept under control to avoid hastened container degradation. It is imperative that cans not be handled when hot and wet because, in the worst case situation, a food poisoning that might be deadly could result from the micro-suction of dangerous bacteria like Clostridium botulinum spores into the can.

Regular checks should be made on the can cooling water's quality since a high salt concentration might leave hygroscopic salt residues on can surfaces and lead to corrosion. By regularly checking total dissolved solids, a cheap water conductivity meter helps avoid product deterioration, which can save both money and product.

Food cans can be dried to a significant amount by being removed from the heat process when the temperature is high enough to evaporate any remaining moisture. For cans exiting a retort, a temperature of roughly 40 C is advised. Nevertheless, there is a maximum temperature that should not be reached since commercially sterile items should not be stored in the temperature range where thermophilic bacteria may develop and survive the heating process. Raw mushrooms are one product that may have a high natural thermophile concentration. Depending on the distribution environment's probable temperature, a more rigorous sterilizing procedure may be required. You may employ a variety of drying aids, such as Tipping devices to drain water from countersunk ends.

1. Air blades
2. On hot beds, cans are rolled.
3. Dips in surfactant.

Because of the extended trapping of water, labeling, shrink-wrapping of trays, and stretch-wrapping of pallets provide unique challenges while cans are wet. It's crucial to use the right label paper grade and advised adhesive. For instance, exterior can corrosion may be caused by very acidic or alkaline starch-based adhesives.

Handling of containers

Every aesthetic flaw on a container should be taken seriously since it could have an impact on a customer's choice to buy it. If the flaw is significant enough, it might endanger the container's integrity by allowing corrosion or puncturing it. Guidelines for the classification of damaged food cans have been released by the US National Food Processors Association.

It must be considered a poor practice to not re-engineer container handling systems that consistently cause harm. The handling of cans following the heat process, particularly on seam regions, has a considerable impact on the possibility of microbiological recontamination. Conveyor system guide-rails should stay away from delicate seam locations. Cans with necked-in designs have less seam-to-seam collisions?

Cans should be kept under regulated conditions, whether they are processed or empty. Inappropriate combinations of container temperature, air temperature, and air humidity may cause condensation, which can then result in corrosion. Psychrometric charts may be used to forecast the likelihood of condensation under a certain set of storage circumstances. In the past, it has been advised to employ tempering chambers to prevent abrupt temperature swings. The use of desiccants inside secondary packaging may be taken into consideration in situations when the danger is high and temperature control is challenging, for as when shipping across the equator. Draughts should be avoided, windows should be covered, and air movement should be limited, such as by door flaps. Stretch- and shrink-wrapping pallets and trays may assist to lower the chance of condensation and the buildup of salt-laden dust, which is hygroscopic and can cause corrosion. Corrosion risk will be reduced by effective stock management. Because to salt that is carried in the air by sea spray, coastal canneries are especially vulnerable to corrosion. Further safety measures, such as components of externally lacquered cans, may be required. Especially at the top edge of the double seam, can ends are commonly externally coated to provide further protection against external corrosion. When salt residues build up on recycled paperboard divider sheets or pallet layer pads, corrosion and perhaps perforation of double seams might result. The specified pH and salt content ranges should be met by paper. Cans that have been filled should not be frozen in order to prevent can deformation from ice expansion.

Water must not be present in order to minimize exterior corrosion and to stop germs from entering via the can seams. For instance, any structure used for storage and shipping containers both need to be waterproof. Cans should be restrained in pallet systems in such a way as to reduce the danger of damage during distribution. A frame placed on top of the pallet, straps, and/or shrink- and stretch-wrapping may be used to accomplish this. The actual pallets should be in excellent mechanical shape and meet the required performance specifications. By puncturing completed cans, protruding nails can pose a danger to food safety. It's also not a good idea to use staplers near to finished cans for the same reason. To avoid corrosion problems, pallet wood and other secondary packing materials should have the proper chemistry and moisture content. To minimize compression failure of lower can layers in the pallet stack, can specifications should contain the axial loads that they can withstand. This information allows manufacturers to recommend maximum stacking heights for storage of completed products. Weight distributions should be uniform throughout the supporting pallets in a warehouse. To minimize moisture buildup, containers should be kept off the floor and away from walls. Ventilation will be aided by dividing supplies into more manageable portions. While one faulty may cause moisture to spread across a stack and corrosive substance leaks, stocks of canned products should be frequently examined to eliminate damaged containers.

In conveyor systems, the litho-printed ornamentation of cans is vulnerable to scratching, hence precautions such using plastic-coated guide rails may be necessary. Case cutter damage at the point of opening for retail display has contributed to a number of cases of food poisoning linked to post-process can leakage.

Availability of canned goods

The process of canning heat-preserved foods depends on the hermetically sealing of the food within a metallic container and the heating of the food to sterilise or pasteurize it. Hence, there is no need for preservatives to stop food from rotting as a result of the development of bacteria. Albeit slowly, certain chemical processes may still occur within the can, such as the destruction of color, flavor, and other natural food ingredients. The food also has a relationship with the container.

Several variables affect how long canned food will stay fresh, but they all have to do with deteriorative reactions of some kind, either those introduced during manufacture or processing steps or those occuring during storage. It's crucial to be able to define shelf life precisely in order to better comprehend these activities. Technical shelf life and minimal durability are two approaches to define shelf life. The time frame over which a product will stay completely marked and keep any specified features for which explicit promises have been made is referred to as minimum durability. After this stage, nevertheless, the food could still be fit for ingestion.

Technically speaking, shelf life is the time frame during which a product will no longer be suitable for consumption under standard storage circumstances.

For instance:

The claim "contains 10 mg/100 g of vitamin C" is placed on a can of fruit. The product originally had more than 10 mg/100 g of vitamin C, but after 18 months of storage, the amount was just 7.5 mg/100 g. As a result, the minimal durability has been surpassed, yet the loss of vitamins does not render the meal unsafe for consumption. Thus, the technical shelf life has not been exhausted. After two years, it is discovered that a second product has 250 mgkg1 of tin. The technical shelf life has been surpassed since this amount is more than the 200 mg kg1 tin maximum legal threshold for the UK. The shelf life of canned goods is impacted by three primary elements that are also linked to deteriorative reactions:

1. Food's sensory qualities, such as color, taste, and texture
2. Dietary stability
3. Acts involving the container.

The first two of these are beyond the purview of this chapter, which will focus on container interactions with the can contents and the surrounding environment in the next sections. Every food has a relationship with the inside surface of the container they are packaged in. Corrosion is the most typical manifestation of this interaction. This manifests itself in simple tinplate vessels as etching or pitting corrosion, and the surface may also get stained. Nevertheless, interior lacquers are available that lessen this impact by creating a barrier between the food and the metal can wall, as was mentioned before in this chapter. Also, different kinds of metal containers that would often corrode extremely fast may now be used.

Only tinplate has any corrosion resistance to the acids contained in food in its unlacquered state; all other metals need to be lacquered. Even tinplate has to be lacquered when packing materials that are very abrasive, such tomato purée, or when there is a risk of pitting corrosion or surface discoloration.

CHAPTER 10

THE ROLE OF TIN

[1]Dr. Subhashini S, [2]Dr. Ishia Auddy
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.subhashini@jainuniversity.ac.in

The inside and exterior surfaces of conventional food cans are covered with a thin coating of tin, which is mostly made of steel. The shelf life of the can is significantly influenced by the tin coating, which is a crucial part of the can's structure. The tin coating's protection of the steel base plate, which serves as the can's structural support, is its most important function. Without a tin coating, the exposed iron would be attacked by the product, resulting in severe discoloration, off-flavors, and swelling of the cans. In severe circumstances, the exposed iron would even be punctured, in which case the cans would lose their integrity. The second function of tin is to provide a chemically reducing environment. Any oxygen present in the can at the moment of sealing is quickly absorbed by the tin's dissolution. This reduces the amount of product oxidation and stops color and flavor loss in certain items. Tin's advantageous properties make it suitable for packing certain product kinds in tinplate containers with an internally plain can component, such as the body and/or ends. There have been several efforts to mimic this quality preservation effect with specific items, such as adding allowed tin salts and tin to lacquers, but none have been as successful as using a regular tinplate container. The food makers generally consider that some quality has been lost in the food product as a consequence of the recent increase in the usage of completely lacquered cans for certain of these goods to lower the tin content of the product.

These beneficial properties must be imparted before the tin can dissolve into the product. The rate of dissolution is typically rather slow, and the shelf life is specified such that, throughout the projected shelf life, the amount of tin stays below the UK legal limit of 200 mgkg1. To make sure this is accomplished, requirements for containers and products are established. Tin preferentially corrodes off tinplate surfaces because it may serve as a sacrificial anode during the corrosion process. Yet, because to the significant hydrogen over-potential that occurs on its surface, tin corrodes quite slowly. This prevents corrosion of the steel and explains why a relatively thin layer of tin can offer such effective corrosion protection. Most food materials contain very low levels of tin, though under certain circumstances, foods packed in containers with internally exposed tin may contain much higher levels.

Tin evaporating off the can's surface

Food in cans contains tin because the product's tin covering disintegrated into it during storage. It is challenging to deal with the idea of mean tin levels, even for a single product, because of this temporal dependency and the many other variables that affect tin content. One of the few generalizations that can be established is that completely lacquered can goods have extremely low tin contents. Yet, corrosion is crucial in cans with an unlacquered component because it provides the iron that makes up the can's structural component with electrochemical protection. Tin pick-up is generally rather modest, averaging 3 to 4 mg kg/month for a 73 mm x 111 mm plain-bodied can of peach slices in syrup, and should not result in excessive tin levels over a product's anticipated storage life. Yet, under certain and unique conditions, the tin dissolves more quickly than it should and significant tin levels may be achieved. The pace at which tin content rises in the diet is influenced by a complicated interaction of a number of variables.

Due to these intricate interactions, only packing experiments and prior knowledge of the product can accurately estimate the rate of tin pick-up and, therefore, shelf life. There are several well-established variables that affect the rate of tin pick-up, including the following:

Temperature and time. The pace at which tin dissolves over time is controlled by the temperature of the storage environment, initially more quickly than afterwards. Tinplate is made visible. Tin exposure area is less significant than exposed metal's existence or absence. Tin levels will be minimal in containers with no exposed tin, but they will be much higher in goods with even a little amount of exposure, such as asparagus cans with one plain end or tin fillets. Weight for tin-coating. The rate of tin pick-up is boosted by using thinner tin coatings, even if the thickness of the tin coating will eventually restrict the maximum quantity of tin that may be present. Tin crystal size, passivation treatment, and many other variables of container specification are also crucial. Product type and composition. The pace at which tin dissolves is directly influenced by a number of variables, including acidity and pH. Some substances, such as certain organic acids and natural colors, may complicate metals and change the product's corrosivity toward tin and iron.

Existence of certain ions. Corrosion may be significantly accelerated by certain ions, such as nitrates. They may be caused by the actual product, by components like sugar and water, or by pollutants such specific fertiliser residues. Low vacuum. Remaining oxygen and the presence of chemical compounds like nitrates are two chemical variables that speed up tin pick-up. These accelerators largely affect the early phases of corrosion since they are depleted when tin is dissolved. Thus, the rate at which tin is typically dissolved decreases as storage continues and the tin concentration rises, and the amount of tin tends to plateau off. After sufficient iron exposure and the majority of the tin have been dissolved, the pace at which the tin is dissolved increases once again. This third stage of the plot is often beyond the point of normal shelf life and is thus seldom important until high tin levels are achieved since the majority of the tin coating has been lost and there has been substantial iron exposure.

Tin poisoning

High tin content in food may upset some people's stomachs and irritate their gastrointestinal system, resulting in symptoms including nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, bloating, fever, and headaches. Shortly after exposure, recovery is anticipated for these transient effects. Tin concentrations over 200 mg kg1 may cause these consequences in certain people, with the chance of symptoms increasing at concentrations above 250 mg kg1. For many years, a variety of foods in internally unadorned tinplate cans have been eaten without any known long-term health impacts. Over the product's shelf life, tin corrosion takes place. Thus, it is essential to take action to slow the pace of corrosion. Heat, oxygen, nitrate, certain chemical preservatives, some chemical colors, and some very aggressive food kinds are all accelerating variables. One efficient way to lower the rate of tin pick-up in cans with unlacquered components is to use a high vacuum level. In the UK, there is a legal maximum amount of tin in food goods of 200 mg kg1, which is often the limit for shelf life.

Iron

There is no set legal limit or suggested upper limit for food's iron content. As iron is a necessary component of the diet, this factor has no effect on how long food goods may be stored lawfully. Yet, the dish won't taste well because of the high iron content. Iron does dissolve from tinplate and TFS containers, but the pace at which it does so is limited by physical considerations such the quantity of steel baseplate that is visible through the tin layer or the lacquer. All tinplate containers have tiny gaps in the tin coating that allow the steel to show through. Ordinarily, they erode gradually, but under specific conditions, pitting corrosion may happen, favoring the steel and producing deep craters or pits that might cause perforation and product spoiling.

When large portions of steel are exposed at the conclusion of tin corrosion, high iron corrosion often only happens. The product's components may corrode the iron once the base steel is exposed, producing hydrogen gas that makes cans bulge. When iron levels damage the product via flavor or color changes, the shelf life is put to an end. Iron pick-up in lacquered cans may result in metallic taints for canned goods, such as certain lager beers and colas, even at relatively low levels. Since they are so sensitive to iron, certain wines cannot be properly packaged in DWI tinplate cans. Instead, they must be placed inside DWI aluminum cans. Chelating agents can be used to prevent the colour changes that dissolved iron can cause in some products.

Lead

Older soldered cans had a lead issue, but levels are now extremely low. Nevertheless, some tinplate has trace quantities of lead contamination, and in the USA, certain environmental pressure groups are pushing for a decrease in these levels. In the underdeveloped world, lead soldered cans may still be produced.

Aluminium

All aluminum cans have excellent lacquer systems to keep food from coming into touch with the metal. Because of this, aluminum levels are often quite low, but in rare occasions, even these low levels may have an impact on delicate goods like beer and cause cloudiness or haze.

Lacquers

Even with items that were previously packaged in basic tinplate cans, the use of lacquers is becoming more and more widespread since they very effectively prevent the dissolving of tin into the substance. Nowadays, a variety of lacquer varieties are often used. The Epoxy Phenolic group, which is ideal for packaging meat, fish, vegetables, and fruit items, is by far the most prevalent variety. The Oleoresinous group, which had a comparable broad variety of applications, has been essentially supplanted by these. Certain canners utilize cans that have been coated with vinyl resins; these cans have the crucial property of being taste and odor free, making them especially suitable for dry packs like cookies and powders, but also for some liquids. If discoloration of the underlying metal caused by reactivity with the substance is an issue, white vinyl lacquers have been employed. Moreover, for marketing purposes, white vinyl lacquers have been utilized to provide a hygienic/clinical image rather than the visually unappealing corrosion patterns on tinplate. The Organosol group, which is likewise flavorless and odorless, has discovered uses for beverage cans.

Even if the remainder of the interior can body is not to be lacquered, it is often desired to preserve the exposed metal at the side seam in a three-piece can. The side-stripe is another name for this lacquer strip. The lacquers described above, as well as several powdered coatings, are employed for this purpose. Before being used on applications for canned food, coatings are thoroughly inspected. The coating application and cure conditions must be rigorously followed, and complete cure must be periodically validated, as part of due diligence.

Interior rusting

Cans may fail due to internal corrosion as a consequence of mechanical damage to the cans or a manufacturing error, abnormally violent reactions between the can and its contents, or the slow dissolving of tin or iron from the interior surface of the cans throughout their shelf life, as detailed above. The inside lacquer of cans may break as a consequence of mechanical damage such as denting brought on by improper handling. Depending on the can and the contents, this will provide the product access to the underlying metal and may cause rather quick localized corrosion.

Sometimes the internal lacquer at these spots may break or lose its adherence to the metal as a consequence of the creation of beads in the can body or rings in the can ends. Either might ultimately cause the product to locally corrode the metal. Insufficiently flexible lacquers—often the result of excessive lacquer thickness or improper lacquer stoving—are the root of the issue. Similar to this, the development of embossed codes on can ends may also cause lacquer to fracture, resulting in localized corrosion. In rare occasions, internal corrosion may be brought on by an abnormally strong reaction between the can and its contents, leading to the lacquer peeling off the can's outside. The only remedy in certain cases is to use a new lacquer since the reasons of these reactions are sometimes quite complicated.

Strain-induced cracking

When metals are externally strained or have internal tensile strains as a result of cold working, stress corrosion occurs, which speeds up the corrosion process in certain situations. Since it may happen to so many different metals, stress corrosion is one of the most significant kinds of corrosion. It is very difficult to forecast where an attack will take place since the circumstances that produce cracking in one metal may not cause cracking in another. Steel cans sometimes exhibit stress corrosion cracking in the beaded region of the body, where metal fractures develop and are preferentially corroded.

Environmental stress cracking corrosion of beverage can ends made of aluminum alloy The aluminum alloy used to create drink cans with easy-open ends was specifically created to provide the necessary mechanical qualities. Yet, because of the interaction between moisture and this alloy, environmental stress cracking corrosion occurs. Contaminants such as residual salts, particularly chlorides and other halides, considerably speed up this process. Because to the tensile stress that this section of the end is under, the score areas on both pull-tab and stay-on-tab easy-open ends are especially vulnerable to this kind of cracking corrosion. As moisture is necessary for this issue to exist, extreme care must be taken to ensure that the easy-open can ends are fully cleaned with clean water and dried before being placed in storage. Even when full cans are stored, humidity levels need to be kept under control using things like appropriate ventilation.

Sulfide stains

On the interior of tinplate or tin-free steel cans, blue-black or brown markings are indicative of sulfur staining or sulfuride staining. This headspace phenomenon in lacquered cans happens during processing and is brought on by sulphur compounds from the product's proteins reacting with iron in solution, which typically comes from base steel exposure at a cut edge or other increased iron exposure point, in the presence of residual oxygen. A combination of iron sulphides, oxides, and hydroxides created the dark deposit. Protein-containing foods, such as peas, sweet corn, fish, or meat, might develop sulphur stains. In the headspace, it is the most evident. While it is not hazardous in any manner and often does not cause more corrosion, it is just seen as an aesthetic issue. It does, however, have an ugly appearance and often causes customer complaints. Because to this, when items that are prone to sulphur staining are packaged, a can lacquer is often used that will either prevent sulphur compounds from penetrating or cover up the issue. The latter lacquers, which are often grey in color and include zinc or aluminum compounds, react with the sulfide compounds to form white metal sulfides, which are nontoxic and not immediately apparent. This strategy is not suitable for acid products, since the acids may attack the coating and result in the production of potentially toxic zinc or aluminum salts.

External deterioration

Any issue that results in exterior damage to the container might shorten its expected shelf life. Avoiding exterior rusting is very crucial. As rusting needs metal, oxygen, and moisture to occur, it may be stopped by eliminating any one of the components. Moisture is the only element outside of the container that is easily controllable.

Certain areas of the can, such as the end seams or the score lines on easy-open ends, are often affected by external corrosion. This is often regarded as a flaw in the can, however in many situations, the issue is caused by inadequate can drying or storage. Under these conditions, corrosion has only started at the can's weakest spot. Leaking product from nearby cans can also cause external corrosion. This is especially problematic with beverage cans since one leaky can, which may have been mechanically damaged, can cause product to spill all over the other cans in the store.

Packaging of food in glass containers

Definition of glass

Glass was described as "an inorganic result of fusion which has cooled to a hard condition without crystallizing" by the American Society for Testing Materials.

Chemically speaking, we are aware that glass is created by cooling a heated, fused combination of silicates, lime, and soda. According to Morey, after cooling, it reaches a state that is continuous with and equivalent to the substance's liquid state, but which has achieved such a high degree of viscosity as to be for all intents and purposes solid due to a reversible change in viscosity.

We are aware that glass has an amorphous random dispersion of its atoms and molecules. It has failed to crystallize from the molten stage, and it retains a liquid-like form at all temperatures, according to science. It is typically clear in appearance, although this may be altered by changing the constituents, much as it is possible to modify other significant characteristics including thermal expansion, color, and the pH of aqueous extracts. Glass has a chonchoidal fracture and is hard and brittle.

A quick history

The Bronze Age, which began in the eastern Mediterranean region approximately 3000 BC, is marked by the discovery of glass beads and arrowheads. In Egypt and Mesopotamia, excavations have turned up ornamental glass. The development of the blow stick during the Roman era paved the way for the production of hollow glass vessels. One of the first materials for packaging was glass. In the United States, container manufacturing was automated in the late 19th century.

Glass containers

Bottles, which have narrow necks, and jars and pots, which have large apertures, are the two principal glass container types used in food packing. Glass closures were historically used as screw action stoppers with rubber washers and spring metal fittings for pressured bottles, such as those for carbonated drinks, and vacuumized jars, such as those for heat-preserved fruits and vegetables. Nowadays, however, glass closures are not as widespread. For storage jars, including those used to store candy, friction fitting stoppers made of ground glass were employed.

Market segments for meals and beverages using glass containers

Glass containers are used to carry a broad variety of goods. Examples include instant coffee, dry mixes, spices, processed infant meals, dairy products, sugar preserves, spreads, and syrups, as well as processed fruit, vegetables, fish, and meat products, mustards, and other condiments. Beers, wines, spirits, liqueurs, soft drinks, and mineral waters are often packaged in glass bottles. Products in these food and beverage categories vary from dry powders and granules to liquids, some of which are carbonated and packed under pressure, and items that have undergone heat sterilization. 6.1 provides a summary of the pro-portions of containers produced in the UK for the main consumption sectors.

The number of glass containers produced in the UK between 1993 and 2002 increased overall in each of the above categories by around 28%. The quantity of milk bottles within the range given in 6.1 has significantly decreased, mostly as a result of the discontinuation of doorstep milk delivery and its replacement with plastic and paperboard containers sold in supermarkets, garage forecourts, etc. The market for flavored alcoholic beverages has seen substantial growth.

Composition of glass

Bright flint

White flint, sometimes known as colorless glass, is made from soda, lime, and silica. All additional glass colors are derived from this combination. An example of a typical composition would be: silica 72%, from high purity sand; lime 12%, from limestone; soda 12%, from soda ash alumina, present in some of the other raw materials or in feldspar-type aluminous material; and magnesia and potash, which are typically not added but are present in the other materials. When added to the batch, crushed, recycled glass lowers the amount of these ingredients needed.

Light green

The iron concentration increases and a bright green glass is created when somewhat less pure ingredients are utilized. To create a blue-green color that is a little bit denser, chromium oxide may be used.

Dark emerald

Iron oxide and chromium oxide are further added to get this color.

Amber

Typically, iron oxide-containing compositions are melted at drastically decreased circumstances to produce amber. Also included is carbon. Amber glass possesses UV protection qualities and can be a good fit for items that need to be exposed to light.

Blue

Cobalt is often added to low-iron glass to produce blue glass. The production of almost any color of glass is possible, either by furnace operation or glass coloring in the forehearth conditioning chamber. The latter procedure is a costly approach to make glass and results in a more expensive finished product. Most carbonated soft beverages' target prices would usually exclude forehearth colors.

Characteristics of food served in glassware

The glass packaging offers a contemporary profile and many benefits, such as:

Quality perception: Consumer research conducted by brand owners has repeatedly shown that, for some goods like spirits and liqueurs, customers associate glass packaging with high quality and are willing to pay more for it.

Transparency: In many circumstances, such as with processed fruits and vegetables, it is clearly advantageous for the customer to be able to view the product.

Although most glass is made with a smooth surface, there are different options available, such as a general roughened ice-like look or specialized surface decorations, such as writing or coats of arms. These effects come from the molding, but an additional alternative is to use acid etching afterward.

As previously mentioned, a variety of colors are conceivable depending on the choice of raw materials. Facilities, such as Stolzle's feeder color system, are available for manufacturing non-mainstream colors in modest numbers. Alternatives for labeling as well as a variety of decorative options, such as ceramic printing, powder coating, colored and plain printed plastic sleeving, etc.

1. Glass is impermeable for all intents and purposes when it comes to the packaging and aging of food.
2. Glass is resistant to all food ingredients, both liquid and solid, chemically speaking. It has no smell.
3. Design potential: To improve product and brand identification, unusual forms are often employed.
4. Glass is heat process able because it has a high thermal conductivity, making it ideal for hot filling, in-container heat sterilization, and pasteurization of food goods.

Glass is microwave-penetrable, allowing for the reheating of food within the container. While the closure may be kept loosely placed to minimize splashing in the microwave, it is advised to remove them before heating begins as a safety precaution. To guarantee that the closure releases even when not initially slackened, developments are now under way.

Glass is resistant to syringe puncture, making it tamper evident. Applying shrinkable plastic sleeves or tamper-evident bands to container closures makes them easily tamper-evident. Preformed metal and roll-on metal closures, which also provide improved tamper evidence, may be applied to glass very easily. While it is acknowledged that vacuum packed food goods may be challenging to open, the stiffness of the container gives better ease of opening and lowers the chance of closure misalignment compared to plastic containers. Technological advancements in the creation of lubricants for closure seals, enhanced glass surface treatments, and better filling and retorting control all work together to make closure removal easier. Therefore, it is crucial to maintain adequate closure torque to guarantee vacuum retention and prevent closure back-off throughout processing and distribution in order to preserve shelf life.

Amber glass protects the goods from UV rays, while in other circumstances, green glass may provide just limited UV protection.

Strength: Glass is a fragile material, yet despite this, glass containers have a high top load strength, making them simple to fill and distribute. Although though glass weighs more than plastics, there are significant cost reductions to be had in terms of storage and distribution. Glass containers don't need much additional packing to resist excessive top loading. Glass is an elastic substance that will, to a certain extent, absorb energy upon impact. An equal distribution of glass during container manufacturing and subsequent processing increases impact resistance. Glass surfaces are simple to wet and dry during washing and cleaning before filling, improving hygiene. Benefits for the environment: Glass containers are recyclable, reusable, and returnable. The design, construction, and management of containers have seen significant weight reductions because to technological advancements.

Safety

According to migration studies on glass, it is an inert material for use in packaged goods and is recognized as the best material for holding food and beverages from a health and hygiene perspective.

Compatibility of products

Glass containers are renowned for allowing liquid and solid meals to be kept for extended periods of time without affecting the product's quality or flavor.

Customer acceptance

According to market studies, people believe that items wrapped in glass are of a high quality. Five primary and mainly unique advantages for food packaging in glass, according to the results of a survey on customer perceptions conducted by The Design Engine on behalf of Rockware Glass, are as follows:

1. Attractiveness and quality perception
2. Favored flavor
3. Visibility of the product and its related appetite appeal.
4. Manufacturing of glass and glass containers

Melting Glass Glass is homogenized during the melting process to create a liquid that is devoid of bubbles. This procedure takes place in a furnace at temperatures of around 1350 C. The hot glass is then permitted to flow via a temperature-controlled channel to the forming machine, where it enters through the feeder at the ideal temperature for the desired container. This would be about 1100 C for conventional containers, Sui for foods and fizzy drinks.

Shaping containers

In the feeder, molten glass is extruded at a controlled rate via an opening with a defined diameter and cropped into a solid cylindrical form. The glass cylinder, sometimes referred to as a gob in the trade, weighs the same as the finished container. The gob enters the parison after being permitted to fall freely via a number of deflectors into the shaping machine, also known as the IS or individual section machine. The parison is made up of a neck finish mold and a parison mold that are placed invertedly. The gob is pressed or blown into the shape of the parison mold to create the parison. The parison is then turned back over, put into the final mold, and blown out to fit the final mould, where it emerges at a temperature of around 650°C. It is stated that a container was created using either the press and blow or blow and blow procedure.

Jars are often produced using the press and blow method, whereas bottles are typically produced using the blow and blow method. The narrow neck press and blow method is an option for light-weight bottles. The other two procedures are better suited to producing bottles with a neck finish size of 35 mm; the press and blow process is typically best suited to producing jars with a neck finish size of 35 mm. A weight reduction of about 30% is possible with the narrow neck press and blow technique because it provides greater control over the glass dispersion than the blast and blow procedure.

Design criteria

While considering the functionality of a glass container, it's important to keep in mind that a wide-mouthed jar's tilt angle should be 22 degrees, while a bottle's tilt angle should be 16 degrees. These values show the lowest level of stability the container is capable of withstanding.

Surface treatments. When the container has been produced, two rounds of surface treatment—hot end and cold end treatment—are performed.

Hot end therapy

Hot end surface treatment is done to assist retain the strength of the bottle and to avoid surface damage while the bottle is still hot. Tin oxide is the most typical coating material used, while titanium derivatives are occasionally employed. High friction surfaces are often produced by this treatment; to solve this issue, lubricant is applied.

Cold-end therapy

When the container has been annealed, the second surface treatment is performed. The annealing procedure lowers the residual strain that the forming process had caused in the container. The goal of the cold end treatment is to generate a lubricated surface that supports the movement of containers through a high-speed filling line and does not degrade when exposed to pressure or water. The most often used lubricants are derived from polyester waxes or polyethylene, and application is done by aqueous spray or vapour, with care given to avoid spray entering the container. Using Dynes indicating pens, the surface tension produced by this treatment may be calculated.

Inexpensive production tools

A glass container costs around one-fifth as much to manufacture as a plastic container. Despite the lower production rates per cavity compared to plastic, this might be helpful since the design can be changed or totally redesigned much more quickly than with plastic, maintaining the marketability of the product while also updating its appearance. The quantity produced per mold cavity varies based on the quantity of manufacturing runs needed, the intricacy of the form, and the level of embossing. The following is a list of some of the most common questions that we get from our customers. The number of molds in a manufacturing set may reach twenty.

CHAPTER 11

CONTAINER INSPECTION AND QUALITY

[1]Dr. Subhashini S, [2]Dr. Ishia Auddy
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.subhashini@jainuniversity.ac.in

In order to fulfill the requirements for packaging, distribution, and usage, quality assurance requirements are identified and implemented into the specification of the glass container at the design stage and via consistency in production. On the other hand, quality control refers to the processes, such as online inspection, sampling, and test techniques, that are used to monitor the process and determine conformance with the specification. The three main categories of approaches are chemical, physical, and visual. For chemical testing of raw materials and produced glass, spectrophotometry, flame photometry, and X-ray fluorescence are utilized. Processing and physical qualities may be significantly impacted by small adjustments to the purity and quantities of raw materials. Checking dimensional tolerances, testing for color, impact strength, thermal shock resistance, and internal pressure strength are examples of physical tests. Visual exams examine for visually discernible flaws.

While the majority are relatively uncommon, there is a vast list of potential visually obvious flaws, hence it is essential that manufacturing be examined using predetermined protocols. These flaws fall into many categories, including different forms of fractures, glass strands, foreign objects and process material contamination from the process environment, misshaped surfaces, and diverse surface blemishes.

Defects are categorized as:

1. Major flaws, such as those that put the customer in risk or prohibit usage in packaging
2. Significant, e.g. faults which substantially hinder efficiency in packing Small, e.g. problems that pertain to aesthetics even though the container is operationally good.
3. Automatic monitoring systems now support visual inspection on production and packaging lines when necessary. Several cameras may be used in systems for container sidewall inspection to find opaque and transparent surface flaws. In order to inspect containers right away after creation, a system may use infrared cameras. In the packing line, it has been said that glass containers moving at up to 60 000 capped beer bottles per hour may detect foreign bodies.

Closure choice

Glass packing container closures are often made of metal or plastic, while cork is still a popular choice for wines and spirits. A tight-fitting plug, a screw-threaded cap placed with torque in one of many methods, or a metal cap applied with pressure and edge crimping may all be used to create a seal. Heat sealing a flexible barrier material to the glass, often with an overlap for protection and then reclosing during usage, may create a hermetic or airtight seal. One of the most basic types of closure is the aluminum foil cap that is placed on a milk bottle.

These closures are all attached to the container's so-called finish. This may seem like a strange term for the section of the container that is made first, but in reality, this word dates back to the days when glass containers were formed by hand while being blown, and since the rim was the final element to develop, it was given the name finish. The finish as in is determined by four essential aspects. 6.8 There are agreed-upon standards for these dimensions throughout the industry. Glass threads have a rounded shape, thus metal and plastic closures with symmetrical threads will fit the right containers.

The decision of closing must be made carefully. A closure that is too big may leak because of the pressure from internal gas pressure or from heating during product processing. A closure that is too tiny might cause an interference fit between the filler tube and the glass container's minimum through diameter. The various closing options may be divided into three groups:

1. Standard seal
2. Airtight seal
3. Pressurized seal
4. Standard seals

For non-vacuum/non-pressure filled items like coffee, milk powder, powder and granular products in general, as well as mustards, milk, and yoghurt, normal seals, also known as composite closures of plastic/foil, are utilized. Glass is suitable exclusively for dry powders and goods, such as peanut butter and chocolate spreads, which do not need a further heating procedure. Glass lends itself to induction and conduction sealing without previous treatment of the glass finish. Foil-based crimped seals, such as those used on milk cartons, have been around for a while and are affordable.

Airtight seals

Metal closures with a composite liner to seal onto the glass rim are vacuum seals. They may be twisted or forced into position, at which point a vacuum is produced by steaming the headspace. Sizes vary from 28 to 82 mm, and they adapt themselves rather well to in-bottle pasteurization and retort sterilization. Sizes for drinks often fall between 28 and 40 mm.

A pressure seal

Pressure seals may be either pushed or twisted into position. They can be made of metal or plastic with a composite lining to create the seal. They consist of:

1. Preformed metal, such as a twist crown or a crown
2. Metal latches were rolled onto the glass's thread.

Pillage-proof roll-on

Preformed plastic that has been screwed into place, with or without a band to indicate tampering. It is crucial to choose the proper glass finish for the intended closing. Before making a final decision, it is advisable to get advice on compatibility from both the closing and the glass makers.

Foods wrapped in glass and heated

Glass bottles are well suited for pasteurization and in-bottle sterilization of both hot and cold filled goods. No issues will arise as long as the headspace volume conditions are maintained and the thermal shock ground rules are followed. A minimum headspace of 5% is often required for hot-fill items that are filled at 85°C and subsequently cooled, whereas a minimum headspace of 6% is needed for cold-fill products that need to be sterilized at 121°C. When creating the design brief, recommendations from the closure provider should always be sought. It should be remembered that glass containers experience twice as much thermal shock while cooling as they do during heat. Cool down differentials and warm up differentials shouldn't be more than 40 and 65 degrees Celsius, respectively, to prevent thermal shock.

Internal resistance to pressure

A well-constructed glass container may resist internal pressures of up to 10 bar, however 5 bar is often the limit. Moreover, it can tolerate internal vacuum conditions, thick concentrate loading, and steam-flushing of the head area to provide the first vacuum needed for the closing seal.

Reseal ability

Closures made of prefabricated metal, rolled-on metal, and preformed plastic may all be easily placed to the glass container's neck finish. Twist-off crown closures provide reasonable reseal performance whereas plunge-off crown closures do not.

Plastic sleeping and decorating possibilities

Labeling, silk screen printing with ceramic inks, plastic sleeping, acid etching, organic and inorganic color coating, and embossing are just a few of the ornamental styles that may be applied to glass containers. The container's stiffness provides an excellent decorative presenting surface that is not prone to deformation due to internal pressure or internal vacuum. It is crucial to test the plastic sleeving film before plastic wrapping the container to make sure there is no secondary movement of the sleeve during pasteurization. The maximum and minimum diameters of the area to be sleeved should not fall outside the stretch ratios of the film specification in order to avoid exceeding the stretch limitations of the film.

Vigor in both theory and application

Glass has a very high theoretical strength, which may be estimated. Due to surface flaws, such as microcracks, which are weak stress areas for impacts like those that happen during handling and on packing lines, the strength is much reduced in practice. Thus, efforts have been focused on:

1. Enhancing the surface to lessen flaws
2. Improving manufacturing surface coatings
3. Minimizing stress both during production and usage.

Eliminating stress spots via thorough examinations of packing line performance, careful recording of all breakages, and the use of high-speed video tools may increase performance. Damaged bottles may be rebuilt to show the sort of impact that led to the failure, such as whether it happened quickly or slowly or if an internal or external pressure-related problem was to blame. The form and thickness of a glass container can affect its strength. Computer modeling of the interrelationship may be used as a design tool to: Identify weak points in a proposed design

Determine the impact of changing the design.

Reduce thickness to mimic the lightweighting effect. Containers may be subjected to certain testing to verify:

1. Horizontal crushing
2. Internal force
3. Thermal jolt

Since glass is a superb insulator, heat is transferred slowly across the walls when a hot liquid is added, which is related to thermal shock. The dimensional change per degree change in temperature, which is modest for glass, is another significant heat-related feature. This characteristic is partly dependent on how the glass is made; for instance, Pyrex is a well-known variety of glass having a lower thermal expansion than typical white flint soda glass. This is accomplished by adding more silica and increasing the percentage of boric oxide in place of part of the soda. It is well known that the key to effectively lowering weight while keeping enough strength is to have an equal distribution of glass in a container's walls.

Design and specifications for glass packs

Design of the bottle's concept

Leading glass producers have cutting-edge design expertise and systems that can be easily integrated with design house concepts to create a container that complies with branding, manufacturing, filling, and distribution requirements while adhering to advised good manufacturing practices and procedures. A food container with the best design, price, and quality to satisfy all their criteria can now be produced relatively easily by the brand manager/packaging technologist. During the concept design stage, it is crucial to comprehend the product specifications and the filling line requirements.

The glass producer may choose the ideal finish and closure design, the necessary surface treatments, the kind of pack to utilize for distribution to the filling line, and the handling systems based on this information. The container's body size should, wherever feasible, achieve a tight fit on the pallet since any glass that hangs over the edge and breaks in transport, while underhung on the pallet causes instability. Live bed delivery may be accommodated with compression and tension strapped packs.

By using just-in-time deliveries, this offers a highly effective delivery system with less on-site stock-holding. Packaging materials are being asked to do more with ever-tougher briefs. It is commonly established that customers have an intrinsic, high quality sense of glass packaging. Customers who purchase food and beverages place a great importance on this emotional connection between the customer and the brand. It becomes obvious why glass is also the material of choice for designers when you consider that it can be shaped into distinctive forms and decorated using a variety of ways. Design flexibility declines when manufacturing efficiency and speed are emphasized more.

Low pitch

Since manually operated or semi-automated production lines are employed, low volume, limited, or special edition items have a great degree of creative flexibility. Bottles have a good capacity to weight ratio and may be made using single gob machines.

Often used

Design flexibility reduces at mainstream manufacturing levels, with automatic filling lines and bulk distribution being crucial. Larger double gob machines will be used to make the bottles, which will have capacity to weight ratios of around 0.6–0.7.

High pitch

The degree of design flexibility is severely regulated for big volume brands, which most likely have global distribution, to guarantee compliance with very fast filling lines. The biggest double and triple gob NNPB machines, with capacity to weight ratios as low as 0.5, will be used to make these brands. With the help of a complete circle design process, a variety of radical design possibilities are produced, along with a realistic assessment of the costs and implications of each proposal. This makes sure that every design alternative is thoroughly investigated and that the best design solutions are quickly introduced to the market.

Concept planning

The packaging is the main focus of a concept design team as a means of brand communication. They make sure the pack is as active as possible in conveying the brand's positioning and value at the time of sale and throughout usage by using brand analysis. Concept designers are able to collaborate closely with a client's design firm, helping the design process so that a variety of creative choices are investigated while also emphasizing the real-world implications of the design options. This enables choices to be made at the earliest feasible stage of the project in a realistic, balanced manner.

Product design

Product designers use computer data from concept designers or any other design agent to perform a set of objective tests to the design to make sure it is appropriate for the task. They include packing line stability, stress analysis to monitor carbonated product retention, and impact analysis to evaluate the efficiency of the container filling lines. Furthermore examined is strength for dispersion and stacking. Exact models are created using a 3D computer model for market research and to get clearance for new ideas.

Design of a mold

The product specification is translated by the mold design team into mold machinery that will replicate the container millions of times. The mold equipment will vary depending on the production facility and the technique to be employed. Modern glass container manufacture demands an extraordinarily high degree of accuracy, which directly affects the quality of the final product. In order to ensure accurate reproduction of the design into glass, the product design computer model is employed to regulate every component of the design. The design is now prepared for delivery to the mold manufacturers.

Production.

To guarantee that best practices are used to all designs and that design teams are current with advancements in manufacturing capabilities, quality information from each production run is provided back to the product and mould design teams. The circle is complete after this. Packing: Use glass containers with caution.

Delivery receipts.

Usually, glass containers are supplied on pallets that have been bulk palletized and shrink-wrapped. Any damaged pallets should be discarded after being inspected for holes in the pallet shroud and shattered glass. Signing the advice letter after notifying the supplier and returning the damaged products is appropriate.

On-site warehousing and storage.

Glass pallets must be handled carefully and not moved; they cannot be stacked more than six high. The lift masts on forklift trucks need to be protected in order to avoid hitting the glass. Glass containers that have been cleaned using an air rinser on a filling line shouldn't be kept outdoors. Pallets damaged during on-site warehousing should not be sent to the filling area unless they are free of glass fragments.

DE palletization.

Each pallet's use order, timing, and product batch code should all be documented. To avoid breaking the glass, plastic shrouds must be removed carefully. If knives are used, the blades should always be covered to prevent breaking the glass. Making ensuring that the layer pads in between the glass containers are removed in a manner that prevents any debris from falling onto the glass's following layer is essential. To avoid future pollution, breaks must be noted and cleanup tools must be available.

Cleaning procedure

Dry with air. In order to avoid condensation from accumulating within the glass, which would make it more difficult to remove card-board waste, the glass must be temperature-conditioned. To make sure that debris is not suspended and let to settle back into the container, the air pressure should be carefully monitored. A water rinse online. If the product is hot-filled, it is crucial to make sure that the water temperature is sufficient to avoid thermal shock at the filler, i.e. not more than a 60°C difference.

Reusable laundry equipment. To guarantee that the bottles enter the washer cups neatly, the washer feed area must be examined. Bottles should not be left soaking in a washer overnight. Long-term, this would significantly weaken the container, and the hot end coating and washer caustic might very likely react on the bottle's surface. In order to avoid thermal shock at the filler where hot-filling is taking place, the proper temperature must be attained.

Filling process

Clean-up instructions should be given and posted so that the filling line staff is aware of what to do in the event that a glass container breaks and the need of documenting any breakages. To avoid contaminating more bottles, it is crucial to make sure the filler head in issue has received an appropriate flood rinse. Make that the container's fill levels adhere to the specifications set out by Trading Standards for measuring containers.

Capping.

There should be clear instructions for cleaning up in case the capper breaks, and all breakages should be documented. At regular intervals, it is necessary to monitor the vacuum levels, application torque of the caps, and cap security of carbonated goods.

Pasteurization/sterilization.

To avoid instances of thermal shock, it is essential to make sure that the cooling water in the pasteurizer or sterilizing retort does not reach a difference of more than 40°C. After cooling, the container should be at a temperature of 40°C, which promotes further drying of the closure and helps keep metal closures from rusting. To further reduce the possibility of rusting, air knives should be used to remove water from closures.

Labelling.

To provide the best circumstances for label application, all traces of condensate must be removed from areas where self-adhesive labels will be utilized. Without consulting the glass supplier, adhesives cannot be altered since this might modify the required adhesives and surface treatments.

Distribution.

The arrangement of the glass containers in the tray, which is often made of plastic or corrugated fiberboard, must be appropriate to avoid excessive movement during distribution. Moreover, the shrink-wrap must be secure, and the batch coding must be accurate and clearly visible.

Warehousing.

The loaded pallets must be properly packed to avoid isolated areas of high loading that might cause a cut through in the compound used to seal the containers, which would lead to pack failures.

Quality control.

The good management practices discussed in this article's development, manufacture, filling, sealing, processing, storage, and distribution of food products in glass containers have been created to guarantee that product quality and hygiene standards are met along with consumer and product safety requirements. Their use demonstrates that these demands were met with attention. It is crucial that all procedures be clearly defined, that people be trained to utilize them, and that frequent inspections are conducted to ensure they are being followed.

By obtaining certification in accordance with a recognized Quality Management Standard, such as ISO 9000, businesses may show their dedication. A Technical Standard and Protocol that can be linked with their ISO 9000 processes was published in the UK with help from the British Retail Consortium and The Institute of Packaging. Over 90% of the retail business is represented by the BRC, a trade group, and the packing industry's professional membership organization, the IOP, which was founded in 1947. One of the goals of the IOP is to educate and train those working in the packaging sector. Establish a formal Hazard Analysis System, which is a requirement of this Technical Standard and Proto-col.

Ecological profile

Reuse

Glass jars may be used again to store food. The daily doorstep delivery of fresh milk in bottles and the collecting of the empty bottles, however, is the only well-known domestic example in the UK. The national average is 12 trips per bottle, while there are large regional variations in the number that may be anticipated. The beverage producers run returnable systems in the licensed trade and in the majority of locations where clients are given beverages.

Recycling

Glass can be broken, melted, and reformed an endless number of times without losing its structural integrity, making it one of the simplest materials to recycle. It is the only kind of packaging that can be recycled while still maintaining all of its excellent attributes. Using recycled glass rather of fresh raw materials for creating new glass containers lowers

1. The need for transporting and quarrying raw materials
2. The power needed to cause the glass to melt
3. Chimney emissions from furnace
4. The quantity of solid trash flowing into landfill.

Glass must first be recovered before it can be recycled. Customers in the UK bring glass to bottle banks. If the UK intends to reach higher European Union requirements for glass recovery at current produced levels of glass container trash, recovery rates must substantially improve from the existing 600 000 t/a. nowadays, 33% or so of the typical glass container is made of recycled material. The recycled percentage is greater for green containers than for clear ones, reflecting the distribution of clear and green glass that the public brings to bottle banks. Up to 90% of green glass today may be recycled glass.

Reducing and lightening

According to claims, the weight of glass containers decreased by 40–50% on average between 1992 and 2002. This decline is typical. The progress achieved by the glass industry to decrease packing weight is overstated since certain brand owners continue to utilize large containers, such as those for alcohol and liqueurs.

As a marketing tool, Glass

1. Glass packaging helps with product identification and brand distinctiveness by using:
2. Imaginative and distinctive surface patterns
3. Acid etching, coating, and ceramic printing
4. Labeling, using both traditional and plastic shrink sleeping methods.

Glass is easily moldable into a variety of forms to enhance shelf appeal. Bottles have been altered to accommodate changing drinking patterns, and jars may be made to be practical and easy to handle. To achieve the no label look, printed pressure sensitive plastic labels employing transparent or as clear as glass adhesives may be employed. The employment of metallic, thermochromic, photochromic, UV-activated fluorescent, and transparent inks, as well as the incorporation of embossed, foiled, velvet-textured, and holographic materials, are among the most recent advancements. These coatings provide for the potential of permanent traceability tagging and are compatible with laser etching.

CHAPTER 12

PLASTICS IN FOOD PACKAGING

[1]Dr. Amar Shankar, [2]Dr. Adarsha H
[1]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[2]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1] s.amar@jainuniversity.ac.in

The most recent EU Directive relating to 'plastic materials and articles intended to come into contact with foodstuffs' defines plastics as being: 'organic macromolecular compounds acquired by poly-merisation, poly-condensation, poly-addition or indeed any similar process from molecules with a lower molecular weight whether by chemical alteration of natural macromolecular compounds'.

Since they can flow and mold under particular circumstances to create sheets, forms, and structures, plastics are often used for packaging materials and in the building of food processing plants and equipment.

1. While they are typically chemically inert, they may not be impermeable.
2. They are economical in addressing market demands.
3. They weigh little.

In terms of transparency, color, heat sealing, heat resistance, and barrier, they provide options. In accordance with the Directive once more, macromolecular compounds are referred to as polymers, which is a term taken from Greek and means having many components, while smaller molecular weight molecules are referred to as monomers.

The earliest plastics were created from natural raw materials and, later, in the first part of the 20th century, from coal, oil and natural gas. Today's most used plastic, polyethylene, was created in 1933. From the late 1940s forward, it was utilized in packaging in the form of squeeze bottles, fish crates that replaced wooden boxes, and film and extrusion coatings on paper-board for milk cartons. The packaging industry is the greatest consumer of plastics in Europe, using roughly 40% of all plastics. Food in Europe is packaged in plastic to a degree of around 50%.

Polymers have tensile and tear-resistant qualities. For instance, although polyethylene terephthalate (PET) film has a mechanical strength comparable to that of iron, it will stretch far more than iron before breaking under stress. The demands of a broad temperature range may be met by certain polymers, from deep-frozen food processing and storage to the high temperatures of retort sterilization and the microwave and radiant heat reheating of packaged food items. The majority of polymers used in packaging are thermoplastic, which implies that heat may continually soften and melt them. This property affects how plastics are used and behave, including how containers are formed, how films are made, and how well they can be heat sealed. Thermosetting polymers are substances that can only be molded once under pressure and heat. When reheating damages the material, they cannot be resoftened. While they are not widely used for food packaging, thermosetting polymers like urea formaldehyde and phenol formaldehyde are utilized for threaded closures in cosmetic, toiletry, and pharmaceutical packaging.

Polymers are employed in food packaging because they have a variety of aesthetic and functional qualities that come from the unique characteristics of each plastic material and how it is produced and utilized. Polymers are inert, or sui, for use in food packaging because they are resistant to many different sorts of compounds. This includes acids, alkalis, and organic solvents, with which they do not react very readily. Microorganisms cannot flourish on plastic.

It is crucial to do rigorous testing to examine all food applications for migration and absorption as certain plastics may absorb some food components, such as oils and fats. Plastics are permeable to water vapor, organic solvents, oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen gases. What determines the rate of permeation?

Plastic type

1. Surface area and thickness
2. Procedure for processing
3. The permeant molecule's partial or concentrated pressure
4. Temperature for storage

Polymers are selected for particular technical applications while taking into account the necessities of the product's usage, distribution, and storage, as well as marketing considerations, which may include environmental perception.

Plastics used in food packaging

Containers, container components, and flexible packaging are all made of plastic. They rank top in terms of value and are the second most often used form of packaging when measured by weight. Following are some examples:

1. Rigid plastic jars, trays, pots, and bottles are examples.
2. Bags, sachets, pouches, and heat-sealable flexible lidding materials made of flexible plastic films
3. Boxes for liquid packing made of a combination of plastic and paperboard
4. For applications where some degree of insulation, stiffness, and the capacity to endure compression is necessary, utilize expanded or foamed plastic.
5. Lids, caps, and wadding utilized in such closures made of plastic
6. Diaphragms on glass and plastic jars provide tamper-evident product protection.
7. To give outward tamper evidence, use plastic bands.

Dispensing and pouring apparatus

To collect and combine separate packs into multipacks, such as trays for jars of sugar preserves, Hi-cone rings for beer cans, etc.

1. Cling, stretch, and shrink wrapping plastic films
2. Films used as heat-shrinkable sleeves, flat glued labels, and labels for bottles and jars

Plastic films may be mixed with other polymers through extrusion, mixing, lamination, and coating to create qualities that the components by themselves couldn't deliver. Extrusion is a technique that joins layers of two or more polymers at the extrusion point. A method called lamination involves using adhesives to join two or more layers of plastic. Prior to extrusion, several plastic granules may be mixed together. Plastic coatings may be applied using a variety of coating processes, including extrusion, deposition from solvent or aqueous solutions, and vacuum deposition.

To broaden the variety of qualities that may be attained, plastics are also utilized as coatings and in laminations with other materials including regenerated cellulose film, aluminum foil, paper and paper board. Adhesives may include plastics to improve low temperature flexibility, initial tack, and seal strength.

Depending on the kind of packaging in question, plastics may be colored, printed, embellished, or labeled in a number of different ways. As an alternative, certain plastics are glass transparent, while others have varying degrees of transparency and might have glossy or matte surfaces.

Drums, intermediate bulk containers, crates, tote bins, fresh produce trays, and plastic bags are also used to store and transport food in bulk. As an alternative to wood, plastic is also utilized to make returnable pallets.

The primary benefits of using plastics for food packaging include their ability to protect food from spoilage, integration with food processing technology, lack of interaction with food, relative light weight, lack of susceptibility to breakage, lack of splintering, and availability in a wide variety of packaging structures, shapes, and designs that present food products in an efficient, practical, and appealing manner.

Types of plastics used in food packaging

Many plastics are better recognized by their trade names and acronyms. With around 56% of the market by weight in Europe, PE has the largest consumption rate, while the majority of the remaining 46% of the market is made up of PP, PET, PS, and PVC. In other markets, the percentages could be different, but the ranking is the same. The other polymers on the list satisfy specialized requirements such enhanced barrier, heat seal ability, and adhesion, strength, or heat resistance.

Thermoplastic polymers make up each of these substances. Each is built on one or more monomers or simple compounds. The simple monomer ethylene, which is produced from natural gas and oil, provides an example. It is based on a particular configuration of hydrogen and carbon atoms. A molecule is the smallest recognized independent unit of ethylene and has the chemical formula C_2H_4.

To create polyethylene, hundreds of molecules are joined together by polymerization. The molecules create a lengthy chain when they connect end to end. Both a linear chain with side branches and a straight chain with branching points are viable ways for molecules to multiply. Properties including density, crystallinity, gas and water vapour barrier, heat sealing, strength, flexibility, and process ability are influenced by the length of the chain, how the chains pack together, and the degree of branching.

Temperature, pressure, reaction time, concentration, chemical make-up of the monomer, and, of primary importance, the catalyst are the variables that influence polymerization. A catalyst does not undergo permanent change but regulates the kind and pace of reaction. The manufacturing of high-performance plastics made possible by the recent invention of metal-ocene catalysts has significantly altered the characteristics of PE, PP, and other polymers like PS. The resultant polymers may sometimes have virtually new properties and novel uses, such as breathable PE film for wrapping fresh goods and sealant layers in laminates and extrusions.

It is fair to think of PE as a group of closely related materials with diverse structures, densities, crystallinities, and other crucial characteristics for packaging. Other simple molecules may be included into the structure, and the polymerization conditions—heat, pressure, reaction time, and catalyst type—can influence all of these factors.

Although all PEs will vary from, for instance, all polypropylenes or the polyester family, all PEs do share certain features that polymerization may affect, some more than others.

All of the plastics on the list are families of related materials, and each family descended from one or more kinds of monomer molecules, therefore similar principles apply to all of them.

The fact that plastics are always being improved, or changed throughout the polymerization process, to improve certain attributes to satisfy the demands of the manufacturing of rigid plastic containers, film, sheets, and other products.

The plastic film, container

End use features in the context of food packaging relate to functional qualities like strength, permeability to gases and water vapor, heat salability and heat resistance, and visual qualities like clarity. The qualities of the package item will also depend on how the plastic was later processed and transformed to become the packaging film, sheet, container, etc.

Production of packaging made of plastic

A description of how plastic packaging is made. The polymer producer typically provides the plastic raw material, also known as resin, in the form of pellets. In various operations, plastics in powder form are employed. While certain plastics are employed as coatings, adhesives, or additives in other packaging-related operations, the first significant step in turning plastic resin into films, sheets, containers, etc. is to melt the pellets in an extruder. A combination of high pressure, friction, and externally provided heat melts the plastic. To do this, pellets are pushed along the extruder barrel using a specifically crafted, polymer-specific screw under carefully regulated circumstances that guarantee the development of a homogenous melt prior to extrusion. The molten plastic is then pressed through a small slot or die to create film and sheet. Molten plastic is pressed into form using a finely machined mold in the production of hard packaging, such as bottles and closures.

Packaging using plastic sheets and film

Films typically have a thickness of less than 100 m by definition. Film is coupled with other polymers and other materials to create laminates, which are then used to create packaging such as sachets, bags, pouches, and overwrapped packaging. The plastic used, the process of making the film, any coatings, and laminations all affect the qualities of plastic films and sheets. There are two different ways to process the molten plastic that comes out of the extruder die for making films and sheets. The molten plastic is extruded onto the chill roll, a chilled cylindrical structure, during the cast film manufacturing process, via a straight slot die.

The molten plastic is continually extruded through a die in the shape of a circular annulus in the blown, or tubular, film process, emerging as a tube. By keeping the air pressure within the tube or bubble at a certain level, the tube is kept from collapsing. The molten polymer is swiftly cooled and hardened in both processes to create a film that is reeled and slit to size.

Film may be stretched to realign or orient the molecules in the machine direction as well as across the web in the transverse or cross direction for better strength and barrier qualities. In the Stenter-orienting process, the cast flat sheet is transversely stretched using clips that grab and pull the film edges, increasing the breadth. At the end of the day, the best way to get the most out of your time is to get the most out of it. Orienting is accomplished using the blown, or tubular, film technique by raising the pressure within the tube to produce a tube with a much greater diameter. Mono-oriented refers to a film that is only extended in one direction. A film is considered to be biaxial oriented when it has been stretched in both directions. The qualities of the gas and water vapour barriers are improved by packing the molecules closer together. The molecules' orientation improves the film's mechanical durability.

The bottom webs of pouches, as well as single piece pots, tubs, trays, or blister packs, are made from cast films and sheets that are not orientated. These materials are utilized in a variety of thicknesses and may be thermoformed by heat, pressure, or vacuum. Since cast films are strong and will stretch and absorb energy if they are torn, even if their final tensile strength may be lower than that of an orientated counterpart, they are also employed in flexible packaging.

In order to anneal or release tensions from oriented films and to reduce the amount of shrinkage that could occur while being heated in a post-production process like printing or heat sealing, oriented films are heated almost to their melting point. Heat-set films that have not been annealed will have extremely poor thermal properties and will shrink tightly onto bottles or cartons when heated. An orientated film is challenging to pierce or start tearing, but having done so, the molecules' alignment makes the rupture and rip easily proliferate. By mechanically inserting a tear-initiating notch into the sealing region, this innovation helps open film sachets.

As compared to cast polypropylene, for instance, which may stretch by 600% before eventually breaking, oriented films can elongate as little as 60% before breaking. Stretch wrapping makes excellent use of this feature of linear low-density polyethylene because the non-branching polymer chains make it simple for the polymer molecules to travel past one another. It is feasible to make sure that the film adheres to itself throughout the production process by introducing certain long-chain molecules.

Most plastic sheets are translucent and difficult to color by adding dye or pigment. Films may be cavitated during film production to generate opacity. Internal light scattering brought on by cavitation produces a white or iridescent look. A simple analogue for the light scatter- ing effect is to examine the example of beating and mixing egg white with sugar to make a meringue, which has a white look owing to the bubbles trapped within the beaten egg white. Certain polymers, like cast PE, allow the addition of a chemical ingredient to the plastic resin that, when heated during the production of films, releases a gas such as nitrogen or carbon dioxide. The plastic's tiny gas bubbles scatter light, giving the film a pearlescent look.

Oriented films are thin, thus there is a chance that the bubbles may be so big that they would rupture the film. Hence, a shearing compound or powder is added to the polymer instead of employing gas bubbles to cause internal rupturing of the plastic sheet when it is pressed. As a result, the film develops cavities and light is dispersed over the whole spectrum. Due to the difference in refractive indices between plastic and free air, incident white light is reflected within the film. Due to the improved area yield, the method reduces the film's density and can result in more cost-effective packaging. White pigments, such as calcium carbonate or, more often, titanium dioxide, are used in the method of pigmenting polymers to give them a white look. However, the use of such an inorganic filler raises the density by up to 50%, reducing the yield and raising the possibility of the film being mechanically weaker. The technique nowadays is to make sure there is a skin of pure resin on the outside layers that functions as an encapsulating skin to provide the film a smooth and glossy surface since early efforts to tint film produced an abrasive surface. Pots and plates for dairy-based goods are thermoformed using white pigmented cast sheet material.

An alternate method of achieving opacity is by metallicizing with a very thin coating of aluminum. This causes a significant amount of incoming light to reflect off the surface and away from the film. As an extra bonus, this method enhances barrier qualities.

The opposite of opacity, transparency, relies on the kind of polymer used and how the film was made. Large crystals may develop if the film is allowed to cool down slowly, which gives the film a hazy look owing to the crystals' diffraction and scattering of incoming light. When polymer crystallinity declines, transparency increases and is also influenced by the additives used in the film. The film becomes foggy if the additive particle size is too big or if it migrates to the surface, as with slip agents.

A film's surface must be as smooth as feasible to improve the printing surface. The final printed result will have a matte look if the surface is rough, which is often seen as being less appealing than a shining, mirror-like appearance. Also, a rough surface could make it difficult to get the film to glide over machine elements without causing static electricity in the film, which might cause issues with how well the packing machine runs. By adding food-grade chemicals to the film, this is overcome. Moreover, films have a propensity to stick to one another and block in the reel. Wax additives, such carnauba wax, are used to lessen blockage. Silica, for example, works as a slip additive by migrating to the film's surface, where they function as ball bearings to keep the surfaces apart.

Films that are matte on one side and have a gloss surface on the other have been produced because it may be useful for marketing reasons to make a distinctive effect on the shelf at the time of sale. This is accomplished by casting the film against a chill roll with a sandblasted matte finish.

Coextrusions may be created by combining streams of molten plastic from different extruders in the die. If the same plastic is extruded in two or more layers and then merged in the die to make a single film, productivity is increased for a given film thickness. With extruders able to combine up to seven layers of various polymers to produce particular features and characteristics, coextrusion is a field that is rapidly developing.

Depending on the usage of plastic films, laminates, etc.

Plastic bags, sachets, pouches, and overwraps are made using single films, coextruded films, coated films, and laminated films in reel form. Making plastic bags involves folding, cutting, and sewing welded seams that are also cut during the same process. Laminates are often used to make pouches. They may be folded from a single reel on the packaging machine, or they can be sealed from two reels, inside face to inside face on three sides, before filling and closing. On these devices, the product is poured vertically into the pouches while they move horizontally.

Pouches may stand when filled and sealed if they contain a base gusset or a similar feature. Pouches may be created independently, and they can be manually filled or automatically filled from magazines. In form, fill, and seal machines where the film is supplied vertically from the reel, free-flowing materials like granules and powders may also be filled vertically. The previously allocated product travels via a tube that these packets are built around. Depending on the surfaces' suitability for sealing, a longitudinal heat seal is either created as a fin seal, with the inner surface sealing to the inside surface, or as an overlap seal. Cutting and the cross seal are used to separate the several packets.

In form-fill-seal machines, solid items like chocolate bars are packed horizontally. Nevertheless, biscuits may also be packaged quickly using roll-wrapping machines with the ends of the film collected together and heat sealed. This method requires that the biscuits be collated on a base tray. Items that are housed in cartons are often covered with plastic film, such as tea bags and chocolate assortments. Before sealing using a hot platen that pushes on the folded ends, the cartons are forced into the web of film, a longitudinal seal is established, and the end seals are neatly folded, envelope-style.

Shrink wrapping is identical to the overwrapping described above, with the exception that when the cross seal is established, the packs go through the heated tunnel without end sealing. Depending on the film's breadth, the film shrinks over the pack's ends to varying degrees.

Using a different packaging style, where the film is supplied horizontally and cavities are thermoformed, produces flexible or semi-rigid packaging, depending on the films used. Heat softens the plastic sheet, such as PET/PE or PA/PE, and pressure and/or vacuum cause it to bend to the shape of a mould. A plug that matches the mould may also be utilized to assist the plastic adhere to the mould when more exact wall thickness or shape measurements are needed. Depending on the heat sealing and barrier requirements of the application, the plastic sheet may be cast, cast coextruded, or laminated film. Cheese or bacon slices are common products that are packaged in this manner. This kind of packaging may be closed with a lidding film lamination in a modified environment or under vacuum.

Rigid plastic packaging

Extrusion blow molding is used to create bottles. The distinctive jointed seal at the foot of the container is produced by extruding a thick plastic tube into a bottle mould, which closes around the tube. The plastic is then pressed into the mold using air pressure. The object is taken from the mould once it has cooled. Milk bottles and jars with broad mouths are produced using blow molding.

Co-extrusion may be used with extrusion blow molding to create multi-layered plastic containers by sandwiching several polymers together. An example would be the sandwiching of moisture-sensitive, high oxygen barrier EVOH between layers of PP. This protects the oxygen barrier from moisture. Because of its design, sauces, mayonnaise, and other oxygen-sensitive goods like tomato ketchup will have a shelf life of 12 to 18 months.

Injection blow moulding, a two-stage procedure, is employed when more accuracy in the neck finish of the container is desired. First, an injection-molded preform, also known as a parison, is a plastic tube with a small diameter. An injection mold is a two-piece mold in which the cavity and the final product can only have the exact, accurate dimensions of the preform. In a subsequent process, this is blow molded while maintaining the precise measurements of the neck finish. The control of wall thickness is also excellent with this method.

Stretching the pre-form after softening it at the second step and then extending it in the direction of the long axis using a rod is an alternative to injection and extrusion blow molding. The polymer molecules become biaxially oriented as a consequence of the subsequent blow molding of the stretched preform, which improves the material's strength, clarity, gloss, and gas barrier. PET bottles for carbonated drinks are produced by injection stretch blow molding.

Injection molding is used to create screw cap and pressure fit closures with precise profiles. Furthermore, wide mouth tubs and boxes are produced using injection molding. Injection-molded products may be manufactured with extremely exact thickness, whether it be thick or thin, in addition to having highly accurate dimensions. Coextrusion is not feasible with injection molding, it should be mentioned.

A pinhead-sized protrusion on the surface of injection-molded products is known as the "gate," and it serves as an indicator of the point at which molten plastic enters the mold. The gate mark on the preform is extended during the blowing process in injection blow molding to a bigger diameter circular shape.

Rigid and semi-rigid thermoformed containers have a wide range of uses in the food industry. A large variety of dairy goods, yoghurts, etc. in single piece pots, fresh sandwich packs, compartmented trays to separate assortments of chocolate candies, and trays for cookies are examples. On in-line thermoform, fill, and seal machines, packing and thermoforming are both possible. These devices have aseptic filling and sealing capabilities.

Filling, sealing, and thermoforming

By putting a suitable pointed rod into the outlet from the extruder's die, profile extrusion is used to create plastic tubing that is always the same diameter. The tube may be lengthened by cutting it, then an injection-molded end with a closure can be added. Via the open end, which is later heat sealed shut, the tube may be filled. Food goods like powdered and granular salad dressings are often packaged in this manner. Coextrusion may be used to create multilayer plastic tubes when greater barrier qualities are needed. Using an end plug and closure, for instance, for loosely packaged confectionery goods, is an alternative.

By dispersing a gas in the molten polymer, such as EPS, foamed polymers are created. Thermoforming is used to create food trays from extruded foam sheet. Insulated boxes for the delivery of fresh fish are created using injection moulding. The delivery of ingredients in the food business uses plastic bulk containers. Rotational molding may be used to create them. Plastics in powder form, such as low- and high-density PE, are used in this procedure. The appropriate quantity of polymer is added to a mold, which is then heated and turned in three axes. The plastic is then deposited in the mold's interior walls, where it fuses and solidifies to create the container's side walls.

Plastics used in packaging, in various forms

The simplest plastic in terms of structure is polyethylene PE, which is created by adding ethylene gas to a high-temperature, high-pressure reactor to polymerize it. Depending on the circumstances of the polymerization, a variety of low, medium, and high density resins are formed. The degree of branching in the polymer chain, and therefore the density and other characteristics of films and other forms of packaging, are controlled by the processing conditions. Heat sealing polyethylenes is simple and quick. They may be transformed into robust, durable coatings that effectively block off moisture and water vapor. Despite the fact that barrier qualities rise with density, they do not have a particularly strong barrier to oils and fats or gases like carbon dioxide and oxygen when compared to other polymers. With a melting point of around 120°C, the heat resistance is lower than that of other packaging-related polymers and rises with increasing density. The 1940s saw the introduction of polyethylene as an insulator since it is not an electrical conductor. Because to their great susceptibility to static electricity, PE films need the addition of antistatic, slip, and anti-blocking additives to the resin during production, conversion, and usage.

In terms of tonnage, polyethylene is the most extensively used material since it is economical in a variety of uses. It is the flexible film industry's workhorse. All nations in the world have polymer factories that provide specialized film-making polymers. Low density polyethylene, or LDPE, is readily stretched by three times its original area by being extruded as a tube and blown. Newer polymers allow for downgauging to 20 or 25 m within a density range of 0.910-0.925 g cm3. It is typically made at a thickness of roughly 30 m.

The films may be colored by mixing a pigment with the polymer before extrusion. It is possible to create coextruded films, which are layers of various plastic materials, or films with two or more layers of the same material when an extruder has more than one die. It is feasible to create a film with three extruders that, for instance, sandwiched a moisture-sensitive polymer, EVOH, between layers of PE for protection. The PE offers strong heat-sealing capabilities as well as a substrate for printing, while the EVOH acts as a gas and odor barrier.

When sliced with a hot wire, or blade, PE film melts at relatively low temperatures and welds to itself to create reliable seals. Premade bags or form-fill-seal machines employing flat film on reels may also be used for packing. The manufacture of bags for frozen vegetables is a significant use of white pigmented LDPE film.

Strong sachets, pouches, and bags with high seal integrity may be created by extruding the PE polymer onto another material or web or laminating to other substrates using adhesives. The PE flows to fill gaps in the sealing region or around contaminants in the seal.

Paperboard and PE are used to provide the basis material for the liquid packing cartons that are detailed in 8. PE film is primarily used in shrink and stretch wrapping to secure pallet-sized loads as well as groups of packets.

The density range of LLDPE, or linear low-density PE film, is comparable to that of LDPE. It is superior to LDPE in most qualities, including tensile and impact strength as well as puncture resistance, and it has short side chain branching. The pillow pack has been widely used for liquid milk and other items.

EVA may be blended with LDPE and LLDPE to increase strength and heat sealing. Due to the variances in both owing to the circumstances of polymer production and ongoing product development, there is some overlap in the applications of LDPE and LLDPE. It might also have commercial ramifications to employ a different thickness for different uses.

Medium-density PE, or MDPE, film is utilized in more demanding circumstances than LDPE because it is mechanically stronger. To combine the excellent sealability of LDPE with the toughness and puncture resistance of MDPE, for example, in the inner extrusion coating of sachets for dehydrated soup mixes, LDPE and MDPE are coextruded.

High-density polyethylene, or HDPE, is the most durable grade and is extruded in the thinnest gauges. Applications using boil-in-the-bag utilize this film. In order to produce peelable seals where the polymer layers can be made to separate readily at the interface of the coextrusion, HDPE and LDPE may be coextruded together to increase heat sealability.

There are two types of HDPE film grades: TD monoidal orientation and biaxial orientation. This film is used for laminating to orientated PP and twist-wrapping sugary confections. The TD-oriented grade is easier to shred across the web than along the web, however. The film is coextruded with a heat-sealable layer to allow it to be used with standard form-fill-seal machines. While the biaxial oriented film has a stronger moisture vapour barrier, its characteristics are comparable to those of OPP. It may be coated similarly to OPP, including metallizing, to provide a high-barrier performance film with the PE-like excellent sealing integrity.

For drums, crates, pallets, and closures, HDPE is injection-moulded; for intermediate bulk containers, it is rotationally-moulded. For blow-molded milk containers with a volume of 0.5 to 3 l, HDPE is often used.

Polypropylene

PP is a linear polymer with protruding methyl groups created as an addition polymer of propylene under pressure and heat utilizing Zieger-Natta type catalysts. The resulting polymer is more transparent in its natural state and is tougher and denser than PE. From the 1950s forward, PP use increased. Of all the thermoplastics with large volume applications, PP has the lowest density, the greatest melting point, and is relatively inexpensive. This versatile plastic offers a wide range of food packaging applications in both rigid and flexible film form.

Because to its high melting point, PP is ideal for applications requiring thermal resistance, such as hot filling and microwave packing. For sterilization and usage in retort pouches, PP may be extrusion laminated to PET or other high-temperature-resistant films to create heat-sealable webs that can withstand temperatures of up to 115-130°C.

PP films feature flat surfaces with favorable melting properties. PP films are rather rigid. It's possible to get a hold of the book here. It is used in presenting settings to improve the packaged product's look. As the cast film, unlike PE, displays stress cracking below 5 degrees Celsius and becomes brittle below 0 degrees, it must be employed in a laminate if the application calls for deep-freeze storage. On the other hand, OPP film is suitable for use in frozen storage. PP is chemically inert and resistant to the majority of regularly encountered organic and inorganic substances. It possesses resistance to grease and fat and acts as a water vapour barrier. Nevertheless, aliphatic and aromatic hydrocarbons may dissolve in films and result in swelling and distortion. The environmental stress cracking of PP is not a concern.

Orientation broadens PP film's applicability. The first plastic film to effectively replace regenerated cellulose film in significant packaging applications, such biscuit packaging, was oriented PP film. OPP films are difficult to weld or heat seal together because the melting temperature is almost the same as the film's shrinkage temperature, and the surfaces separate when the seal is applied. In packing machines made for RCF, however, acrylic-coated OPP offers high runnability, including heat sealing, however better temperature control of the heat-sealing apparatus is needed. Moreover, acrylic coatings have good odour-barrier qualities. Water-based low-temperature sealing coatings are also available to provide packaging machines better runnability.

PVdC coating creates a layer that is a better barrier for gases and water vapor. This film provides exceptional flavor and moisture barrier protection when used as a carton overwrap for tea bags and a variety of chocolate candies. For usage in laminations, one-side coated EVOH coatings are also offered. A high gas and water vapour barrier film may be made from PP films by metallicizing them and applying a heat seal coating.

The usage of PP films in laminations with other PP and PE films is common. This enables printing on one surface's backside before it is buried within the succeeding laminate. The ultimate tensile strength and various barrier characteristics, such the barrier to water vapour, are improved by generally orienting or stretching the film by a factor of 5 in both the machine and transverse directions. The polymer molecules are securely bound together when they are oriented in one direction. Nonetheless, they have poor mechanical strength, behaving similarly to cotton fibers in a ball of cotton wool. As cotton fibers are spun, a strong thread is produced. Similar to this, biaxially arranging the polymer fibers in two directions yields a film with a high strength. This degree of biaxial orientation results in a 25-fold increase in area as compared to the extruded area, and a corresponding decrease in film thickness. For packing, oriented film with a constant thickness of 14 m may be produced.

The principal packaging plastics, PP and PE, have the lowest surface tension values and need further processing to be suitable for printing, coating, and laminating. High-voltage electrical discharge, ozone treatment, or gas jets are used to accomplish this. By adding aldehydes and ketones, which raise surface energy and enhance the adherence, or keying, of coatings, printing inks, and adhesives, these treatments slightly oxidize the surface.

In order to create OPP film at a reasonable cost, widths of up to 10 m or more are used. Production is either limited by extrusion capacity for thicker films or by winding speed for extremely thin films.

Nowadays, most extrusion systems contain more than one extruder, allowing for faster production rates and the use of several polymers feeding into a single common die slot. A film is typically constructed of three to five layers of resin. The outer layers may be pure PP resin to provide gloss to the surface and/or protect the inner resins should they be moisture sensitive, as is the case with EVOH. The center layer may be a thick core that is either opaque or transparent. Secondary polymer layers may have special barrier properties or pigmentation. Furthermore, tie layers—thin layers of unique adhesion-promoting resins—can also be extruded. A variety of food items are packaged in PP films, including tea, coffee, ice cream, chocolate and sugar confections, cookies, crisps, and snack foods. Snacks and crisps that need a greater barrier or a longer shelf life may utilize metallized PP film. There are films with twist wrapping capabilities as well as white opaque PP films. For the purpose of wrapping heat-sensitive food goods, such as those containing chocolate, converters may also apply cold seal coatings on the side opposite the printing side in register with the print.

For usage as food trays for frozen or cold food that may be cooked by the customer in microwaves and steam-heated ovens, paperboard can be extrusion coated with PP. The main uses of PP in the food industry are for injection-molded yoghurt, ice cream, butter, and margarine pots and tubs. Moreover, it is blow-molded for wide-mouth jars and bottles. For the injection molding of closures for bottles and jars, PP is often utilized.

For flip top injection-molded lids that stay connected to the container when opened, such as sauce dispensing closure and lid, PP can provide a sturdy live hinge. It is utilized in thermoforming as a monolayer from PP sheet for a variety of culinary items, including cheese, sauces, crackers, and snacks. It is used for the packaging of a variety of food products, including those packaged aseptically, by hot filling, in microwaveable and retor packs, and in coextrusions with PS, EVOH, and PE.

Terephthalic polyethylene

Polyesters are condensation polymers made from ester monomers as a consequence of the reaction between an alcohol and a carboxylic acid. Depending on the monomers employed, polyester comes in a wide variety of forms. PET is created when terephthalic acid and ethylene glycol interact and polymerise.

PET may be blown into film or cast into film. It may be extruded as a sheet for thermoforming or as a blow-molded, injection-molded, foamed, extrusion-coated product for paperboard. PET may be converted into a variety of transparent polyester films that are biaxially orientated using technology that is much the same as that used to extrude and Stenter-orient OPP. The majority of polyester films have a film thickness of less than 12 m, while laminated composites have a film thickness of around 200 m. The creation of PET film does not involve the use of any processing chemicals.

When orientated, polyesters have a very high mechanical strength and a far greater heat resistance than many plastics. In comparison to polyolefins like PE and PP, the ester contains more radicals that might form chemical bonds, making the surface more reactive to inks and less chemically resistant.

Because of the production processes, PET cannot shrink below 180°C and melts at a significantly greater temperature than PP, generally 260°C. This implies that PET is perfect for high-temperature applications like steam sterilisation, boil-in-the-bag, and for cooking or reheating in conventional radiant heat ovens or microwaves. The film retains its flexibility at temperatures as low as 100°C. There are varieties that can be heat-sealed, and it can also be laminated to PE to provide excellent heat-sealing qualities. PVdC-coated versions provide an effective gas barrier and heat-sealing capabilities.

PET has a medium oxygen barrier on its alone, but when metallized with aluminum, it develops a strong barrier to oxygen and water vapor. This is laminated with EVA on both sides to provide very efficient seals, and it is used for vacuum-packed liquids like coffee and bag-in-box beverages. It is also utilized in flexible packaging for snack foods that have a high fat content and need protection from air and ultraviolet radiation. PET that has been metalized is utilized as a susceptor in microwaveable packaging, either as a strip or a flexible laminate.

For f/f/s pouches, reverse printed PET film is utilized as the exterior ply. This gives the heat-sealing bars a heat-resistant surface to touch. The bottom web in formed applications that are lidded with a heat-sealable PET grade may be made of the amorphous cast grades. Both microwaves and traditional ovens may be used to reheat these packets.

Another use for PET film is in retort pouches, where it is laminated with aluminum foil and either PP or HDPE to provide strength and puncture resistance. SiO2 may be oxide coated on PET to increase the barrier while maintaining the material's transparency, retort, and microwaveability. For usage as ready meal trays that can be reheated in microwaves and traditional radiant heat ovens, paperboard is extruded coated with PET, making them dual ovenable. The interior of the tray, which is constructed by corner heat sealing, has the PET coated side of the paperboard.

Due to its usage in all sizes of carbonated soft drink and mineral water bottles made by injection stretch blow molding, PET is the plastic with the fastest increasing market for food packaging applications. As an alternative to PVC, edible oils are also packaged in PET bottles. Under the brand name Escofoam, a foamed colored PET sheet has been created. It may be laminated and utilized as the bottom web in thermos-formable f/f/s packaging with a printed, peelable seal top web, such as with MAP for fresh meat and fish. PE/EVOH/PE/PE foam would be used in a high-barrier laminate that needed to employ an extruded tie polymer as an adhesion booster.

CHAPTER 13

POLYETHYLENE NAPHTHALENE DI-CARBOXYLATE

[1]Dr. Subhashini S, [2]Dr. Ishia Auddy
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
Email Id- [1]s.subhashini@jainuniversity.ac.in

Dimethyl naphthalene decarboxylase and ethylene glycol combine to form PEN, a condensation polymer. Due to its enhanced strength and water and gas barrier qualities over PET, this polyester polymer has attracted attention in recent years. Compared to PET, it is more temperature resistant and resistant to UV rays. It may be blow molded into bottles and turned into films. A modified polyester resin from BP Chemicals is called PEN. It comes in pure PEN, copolymers with PET, and blends of PET and PEN. The application-specific performance and cost criteria will determine which naphthalate-containing resin is chosen.

One-way beer/soft drink bottles, returnable/refillable beer/mineral water bottles, sterilizable infant feeding bottles, hot fill uses, sports drinks, juices, and dehydrated food items in flexible packaging are just a few examples of suggested applications. Since PEN is more costly than PET, there are less uses for it in food packaging. It is probable that PEN containers will only be suitable for use in closed loop returnable packaging systems due to their relatively high cost. Al/Si oxides may be used to cover or vacuum metallize PEN sheets. A metallized PEN film, Hostaphan RHP coated with SiOx from Mitsubishi Plastic Films, is said to have been laminated to PE and used for powdered infant formula. It may be possible to create SiOx coated PEN film for retorting, which would allow it to be utilized for things like soup in stand-up pouches.

A polyester with carbonate groups in its structure is polycarbonate PC. It is created when phosgene and the sodium salt of bisphenolic acid polymerize. It is heat resistant, glass transparent, and very robust and long-lasting. PC is primarily utilized in glazing and processing equipment as a glass substitute. Large, returnable/refillable, 3-6 liter water bottles account for the majority of its packaging use. It is used as a substitute in the food service industry and for sterilisable infant feeding bottles. It has been used for reusable milk bottles, microwaveable baking dishes for frozen foods, and, if coextruded with nylon, carbonated beverages.

Ionomers

Ionic crosslinks in ionomers, which are polymers made from metallic salts of acid copolymers, give this class of plastics their distinctive properties. The most popular for use in food packaging is SurlynTM from Dupont, which uses ethylene and methacrylic acid as the copolymer and zinc or sodium as the metallic ions. SurlynTM is associated with PE. It is transparent, more durable than PE, more puncture-resistant, and has exceptional oil and fat resistance. Thus, it is employed in goods that include essential oils, such as the aseptic liquid packing of fruit juices in cartons and the sachet-packaging of snack items that contain fat. It seals even when the seal region is contaminated with product because to its superior hot tack and heat-sealing capabilities, which increases packing line speeds and output. It is used in the packaging of cheese, pork, and poultry. It works especially well when packaging products with pointed protrusions.

On equipment intended to process PE, SurlynTM grades are available for use in extrusion and coextrusion processes for blown and cast films as well as extrusion coating. It is also used as a tie or graft layer to strengthen the bond between other materials, such as PET and nylon or PE and aluminum foil. If PE is employed, next to one of the ionomer layers, and buried in the laminate, such as PET/PE/Ionomer, an ionomer/ionomer heat seal may be peelable. Ionomer films, especially coextruded films, are employed in all of the major forms of flexible packaging for food in laminations and extrusion coatings. They consist of:

1. Both vertically and horizontally
2. MAP and vacuum packaging

Four-sided sealed pouches and twin-web pouches with a thermoformed inner ply made of paperboard composite cans, such as those with membrane or diaphragm seals made of aluminum foil/ionomer. Ionomers are utilized with PET, PA, PP, PE, aluminum foil, paper, and paperboard in laminated and coated forms.

Acetate of vinyl ether

Copolymers of ethylene and vinyl acetate are known as EVA. It has many similarities with PE and has a variety of uses when combined with PE. The amount of vinyl acetate in the mixture affects its characteristics. In general, sealing temperature drops as the VA component rises while impact strength, low-temperature flexibility, stress resistance, and clarity rise. At a 4% level, it enhances heat salability, at 8% it increases toughness and elasticity, along with better heat salability, and at higher levels, the resulting film has strong stretch wrapping qualities. Large meat slices are vacuum packed in EVA with PVdC, a durable high-barrier film, together with wine in bag-in-box liners made of metallized PET.

For usage as peelable coatings on lidding materials such aluminum foil, OPP, OPET, and paper, modified EVAs are available. They allow for heat sealing, which produces a heat seal with controlled strength for quick, squeaky-clean peeling. Both flexible and stiff PE, PP, PET, PS, and PVC containers may be sealed with these coatings. Moreover, strong interlayer tie bonding between different materials, such as LDPE and EVOH, PET and paper, is achieved using modified EVAs. Hot melt adhesives, which are often used in packing machines to construct and shut packs, such as folding cartons and corrugated packaging, also include a significant amount of EVA.

Polyamide

Nylon is a popular name for polyamides. Nylon, however, refers to a variety of Dupont-made nylon goods and is not a generic term. While their primary usage was in the textile industry, they later found employment in packaging and engineering, among other significant fields. A condensation process between a diamine and a diacid, or a molecule containing each functional group, produces polyamide polymers. The number used to identify the various varieties of polyamide plastics is related to the number of carbon atoms in the generating monomer. Packaging uses for nylon 6 and the similar material nylon 6.6 exist. It has uses that are comparable to PET because of its mechanical and thermal characteristics. Coextrusion and the production of blown film are both possible with PA resins. It's possible to combine PA with PE, PET, EVA, and EVOH. It may be blow molded to create transparent glass bottles and jars that are lightweight and impact resistant.

High heat resistance and exceptional stress fracture and puncture resistance are also characteristics of biaxially oriented PA film. It is readily thermoformed, has superb clarity, and produces a somewhat deep pull. It resists oil and fat and offers a superb flavor and odor barrier. It is hard to heat seal and has a high permeability to moisture vapour. PVdC coating may get rid of these drawbacks. This structure is employed as the bottom thermoformable web, or deep drawn, for packing bacon and cheese in vacuum packs or in gas-flushed packs. They may also be overcome by lamination or extrusion with polyethylene. You may metallize the film.

In retor packaging, PA film is utilized in combinations like PA/aluminum foil/PP. In the retort processing, the film is not whitening. Compared to other countries, the United States has the highest rate of unemployment in the world.

Vinyl chloride polymer

Vinyl chloride monomer is the outcome of replacing one of the hydrogen atoms in ethylene with a chlorine atom. PVC is made when vinyl chloride is added to other polymers. Unplasticized PVC is a rigid, brittle polymer with valuable qualities, but it must be modified in order to be utilized effectively. Plasticizers may be added to increase flexibility, slip agents can be used to minimize surface friction, pigments can be added to provide a variety of hues, and stabilizing agents can be added to optimize thermal processing. When choosing additives for film that will come into contact with food, care must be taken to prevent packaging materials from migrating into food products. Transparent or colored compartmented trays for chocolate assortments and biscuits are made of rigid UPVC. Salads, sandwiches, and prepared meats are packed in thermoformed trays using it and MAP.

The bubble technique of extrusion is used to create the majority of PVC films. It may be orientated to make film with a significant amount of shrinkage. At quite low temperatures, there is a possibility of up to 50% shrinkage. When the film is heat shrunk around objects, it releases the least energy compared to other plastic films that are often utilized. It is plasticized, and the strong stretch and cling properties make it ideal for manually and semi-automatically overwrapping fresh products, such as apples and pork in rigid trays. Heat-shrinkable sleeve labels for plastic and glass containers are made from printed PVC film. Tamper-evident shrink bands also employ it. Trays made from thicker grades are thermoformed and lidded with a top web that works with heat seals after being filled. PVC is very resistant to grease and fat. It is used in the form of blow-molded bottles for fruit beverages and vegetable oils. That is quite clear. It is tough as a film, has a high elongation, but has a poor tensile and tear strength. While acceptable for the packing of mineral water, fruit juice, and fruit drinks in bottles, the moisture vapour transfer rate is rather high. Depending on its makeup, PVC softens at relatively low temperatures. Heat sealing PVC to itself is simple, however using a hot wire has the drawback of releasing HCl gas.

The quantity of plasticizer used during manufacturing affects how permeable the material is to gases and water vapor. While UPVC is an excellent gas and water vapour barrier, these qualities deteriorate as the plasticizer concentration rises. There are types of materials used to wrap fresh meat and vegetables that have excellent moisture vapour barriers to slow weight loss while maintaining oxygen permeability to let the food breathe. By slowing respiration, particularly when packaged in a modified environment, fresh meat may maintain its red color while produce like fruits, vegetables, and salads can keep fresher for longer.

Polyvinylidene chloride

Vinylidene chloride, which is created when two hydrogen atoms in ethylene are swapped out for chlorine atoms, and vinyl chloride are copolymers. Dow Chemical, who initially created PVdC, gave it the brand name Saran. The good barrier that PVdC provides against water vapor, gases, fats and greasy materials, as well as being heat sealable. Because to its strong gas and odor barrier, it is used to shield foods with delicate flavors and aromas from both flavor loss and the entry of volatile pollutants. It has numerous applications in flexible packaging:

Monolayer media.

The Cryovac range, invented by W.R. Grace and now run by the Sealed Air Company, is a well-known example of such application. In order to produce a tight wrap around the product, hot water shrinkable bags are employed in the packaging of chicken. Despite the fact that the film may be utilized in sachet form, it is less likely to be cost-effective than alternative plastic films, some of which could include PVdC as a coating. As casing for chubb and sausage is an intriguing use.

Coextrusions.

PVdC is often utilized in coextrusion, where extruders now combine three, five, or even seven extrusion layers to suit the cost-effective demands of product protection and packing equipment.

Coatings

They may be applied to RCF, paper, paperboard, and plastic films like BOPP and PET using solutions in either organic solvents or aqueous dispersions. The packaging of cured meats, cheese, snack foods, tea, coffee, and confections all often employ PVdC as a component. It is utilized in a variety of pack forms for ambient filling, hot filling, retorting, low-temperature storage, and MAP. A benzene ring is added to the vinyl compound styrene to form the addition polymer known as polystyrene PS. For a variety of pack kinds, PS may be foamed, injection molded, coextruded, and extruded as a monolayer plastic film. It can also be coextruded into a thermoformable plastic sheet. To increase its characteristics, it is also copolymerized.

While the oriented plastic film has interesting features, it is less widely recognized. That is quite transparent. It has a deadfold feature, a distinctive wrinkle that suggests freshness, and is stiff. For carton windows, transparent film is used, and for labels, white pigmented film. The movie is good. Since it offers a low barrier to common gases and moisture vapour, it is ideal for packing things that need to breathe, such fresh fruit.

A stiff, lightweight material with high impact protection and thermal insulation qualities may be created from PS by simply foaming it. It has two applications. The blown foam may be extruded as a sheet that can be thermo-formed into cups, tubs, clamshell-shaped containers for fast food, trays for meat and fish, and egg cartons. Label stock may be made from thin sheets. Foam may also be manufactured in the form of pellets or beads, which may then be molded under pressure and heat. Expanded polystyrene, or EPS, is what it is. It has robust walls for insulation and may be used as a transport container for fresh fish.

Polystyrene is the common term used to characterize PS thus far. Being fragile is its primary disadvantage as a rigid or semi-rigid container. This may be avoided by mixing with the elastomeric polymer styrene butadiene copolymer, often known as SB or SBC. HIPS, or high-impact polystyrene, is the name of the mixture. A substance becomes harder by blending. It is transparent and often employed in the form of a white pigment. For dairy products with a short shelf life, the sheet may be thermoformed. Several additional polymers, each of which adds to the protection and application requirements of the product in question, are also employed with HIPS in multilayer sheet extrusion. Along with HIPS, other polymers that may be utilized in this method include PE, PP, PET, PVdC, and EVOH. Dairy items such cream- and yoghurt-based desserts, UHT milk, cheese, butter, margarine, jam, fruit compote, fresh meat, pasta, salads, etc. are among the foods containing these ingredients. On thermoform, fill, and seal machines, many of these goods are aseptically packaged.

Styrene butadiene SB copolymer, which is strong, transparent, and has a high-gloss surface finish, is also a packaging polymer in and of itself. High gas and water vapor permeability characterizes blown film. Fresh vegetables is packaged with it. It may be heat sealed to many different surfaces. The film is suitable for twist-wrapping sugar candy since it retains its creases well. The flexible hinge on injection-molded containers with inbuilt locking closures is comparable to PP in this way. In the USA, it is referred as as K resin. Moreover, it may be utilized to create bottles with excellent impact resistance and glass-like clarity from thermoformable sheet, injection, and blow molding. The following is a list of the most common questions we get from our customers.

Butadiene with acrylonitrile styrene

Acrylonitrile, butadiene, and styrene are the three monomers that make up the copolymer ABS, which has a broad variety of useful qualities that may be changed by adjusting the ratios of the three monomer components. It is a strong material with excellent tensile, impact, and flexing characteristics. ABS is either transparent or opaque. It may be molded and is thermoformable. It has been utilized for thin-walled margarine tubs and lids, as well as for big shipping and storage containers.

Vinyl ethanol from ethylene

Vinyl alcohol and ethylene combine to form EVOH. It has a connection to polyvinyl alcohol, a synthetic polymer that is water soluble and has good adhesion, emulsifying, and film-forming capabilities. In terms of oil, grease, organic solvents, and oxygen, it has a strong barrier. It is sensitive to moisture and water soluble in film form. PVOH is used as a coating for BOPP and has packaging uses in film form but not in food goods. To preserve PVOH's high-barrier qualities, EVOH was created. Also, it serves as a superb barrier to oxygen and resists the absorption and permeation of many products, particularly those that include oil, fat, and delicate flavors and fragrances. While it is far less susceptible to moisture than PVOH, it must nevertheless be buried in multilayered coextruded structures like flexible packaging film, thermoforming sheets, and blow-molded bottles to avoid coming into touch with liquid.

The other polymers used vary according on the application, i.e., the kind of food product and pack. For processed cheese, pâtè, UHT milk, and milk-based sweets and beverages, PS/EVOH/PS and PS/EVOH/PE sheets are employed. Moreover, fresh meat, spaghetti, salads, coffee, hot filled processed cheese, including portion-packed cheese, and fruit compote are all prepared using it. For pasteurizable and retor goods like fruit, pâté, baby food, sauces like ketchup, and ready meals, some of which are reheated in the microwave, a higher-barrier sheet made of PP/EVOH/PP may be created. Applications for coextruded films include EVOH with nylon, LLDPE, and SurlynTM with food items including bag-in-box wine, processed meat, and fresh meat.

For coffee, condiments, and snacks, extrusion lamination may incorporate EVOH with PET, LDPE, and LLDPE. It is used as a tray lidding material together with PET and PP. For aseptically packaged UHT milk and fruit juices, extrusion lamination of paperboard with EVOH and PE is utilized, where the EVOH layer serves as an oxygen barrier in lieu of aluminum foil. For sauces, ketchup, mayonnaise, and cooking oils in blow molding, EVOH is combined with PP; for salad dressings and juices, it is combined with HDPE. Squeezable EVOH-based ketchup and mayonnaise bottles are available. By combining EVOH into structures with LDPE and LLDPE, small tubes created via profile co-extrusion are utilized for condiments. EVOH is a crucial polymer used in several processing applications that offers protection for a variety of food products.

Polymethyl pentene

The brand name of the methyl pentene copolymer is TPX. It has the lowest density of all commercially available packaging polymers and is based on 4-methyl-1-ene. It is a transparent material that withstands heat up to 200 degrees Celsius. The melting point of crystals is 240°C. TPX has great gloss, transparency, and chemical resistance. Both extrusion and injection molding are possible.

It was first introduced by ICI in the 1970s, and Mitsui Chemical of America, Inc. presently sells it. The primary use for food packaging is as an extrusion coating on paperboard used in baking applications in the form of cartons and trays for bread, cakes, and other cook-in-pack goods. Food packaged in this fashion can be cooked in both microwaves and radiation ovens since the packaging is dual openable. Comparing this plastic's surface to surfaces made of PET and aluminum, it offers better product release. Heat sealing cannot be used to construct TPX coated trays; instead, interlocking corners must be used.

High-nitrile plastics

Acrylonitrile copolymers make up HNPs. They are used in the production of other polymers like SAN and ABS. The nitrile component provides the common gases with excellent gas and odor barrier qualities as well as outstanding chemical resistance. HNPs provide excellent taste and aroma protection as a result.

Under the brand name Barex®, which was first developed by Sohio Chemical and is currently manufactured by BP Chemicals, is a line of HNPs that are legally allowed for use in food packaging. This acrylonitrile-methyl acrylate copolymer has had rubber added to it. For blown and cast film, extrusion blow molding, injection stretch blow molding, and injection molding, grades are offered. It is a transparent, strong, stiff material with excellent chemical and gas barrier properties. In blow-moulded bottles that were coextruded with HDPE, it served as the inner layer. Barex® films may be laminated with PE, PP, and aluminum foil for flexible packaging applications with food goods or coextruded as film and sheet. Materials in sheet form may be thermoformed.

Fluoropolymers

The brand names are NeoflonTM and Aclar® This material provides the best gas barrier, the greatest water vapour barrier of all the commercially available packaging polymers, and strong resistance to the majority of chemicals at low temperatures. It is a suitable substitute for aluminum foil in many applications. It is offered as a sheet or film. It can be laminated, thermoformed, metallized, and sterilized. It is clear and heat sealable.

It is reasonably priced and well-known for use in pharmaceutical blister packs that may be thermoformed and laminated with PVC. Applications for food packaging are feasible but not currently emphasized.

DuPont Teflon®, also known as polytetrafluoroethylene, is an inert, waxy polymer with a high melting point. In packaging machines, it is applied in the form of tape and coatings to lessen adhesion where that can be an issue, such as with heat seal bars, and to lessen friction when packaging materials travel over metal surfaces.

Materials based on cellulose

Regenerated cellulose film was used for the original package. Extrusion via a slot, casting onto a drum, and acid treatment are used to regenerate pure cellulose fiber that is sourced from wood. The regenerate fiber is then coiled up as film. Cellophane is a frequent moniker for it, however this is only a brand name. RCF is not a thermoplastic material since it is not heated to a molten state or otherwise softened during processing. Nevertheless, cellulose is a naturally occurring, high-molecular-weight polymer.

Humectants are used to plasticize it and make it flexible. Depending on the application, the degree of flexibility may be changed. The amount of flexibility may vary from being somewhat hard to being very flexible, like twist-wrap, which is used to wrap individual pieces of sugar candy. Dead folding is used in RCF to maintain a folded or twist-wrapped state. This feature is used with items that require to lose moisture, such pastries and other flour confections, to create the right texture when packed. It is a weak barrier to water vapour. In such a packaging, plastic sheets like PP or PE would maintain an excessively high relative humidity, which would promote the formation of mold. RCF functions well as an oxygen barrier when dry.

Coating provides enhanced water vapour and common gas barriers as well as heat sealability. PVdC or nitrocellulose are the coatings. Depending on the coating process and choice, a variety of barrier performances are achievable. It is metallized and colorable. RCF is prin.

To obtain certain degrees of performance and aesthetics, RCF may be laminated with paper, aluminum foil, PET, metallized PET, and PE. It is utilized in laminates when reheating requires temperatures between 220-250 C due to its heat resistance. With the emergence of the less expensive BOPP, which equals RCF in many aspects, use is much lower now. The design of the pack is often a form-fill-seal bag. RCF is used in gift packets and packaging that is designated as biodegradable for food.

A bottle is utilized to provide tamper evidence using thick, uncoated RCF. This is accomplished by wetting a small-diameter RCF sleeve, putting it over the bottle's top and closure, and letting it air dry until it shrinks snugly to the object it is covering.

Also made from cellulose is cellulose acetate. High transparency and gloss are present. It is printable. It has been used as a window in carton design as well as a laminate with paperboard for confectionery boxes. It costs more than BOPP in both uses. Furthermore, PVC, PET, and PP have taken its place as a sheet material for the production of transparent boxes.

Vinyl acetate polymer

In terms of open time, tack, and dry bond strength, PVA, a vinyl acetate polymer, creates a highly amorphous substance with excellent adhesive qualities. PVA is primarily used as an adhesive dispersion in water for food packaging. Paper and aluminum foil are laminated together using PVA adhesives, which are also used to seal the side seams of folding cartons and corrugated fiberboard boxes.

Plastic film coating: kinds and characteristics

Overview of coating

To enhance the heat-sealing and barrier qualities of plastic films, coatings are added on their surfaces. To increase barrier, they are also added to hard polymers. An etched roll has traditionally been the most popular way of applying coating to film because it provides precise and consistent coating with weights up to around 6 g m2. Commercially, film producers provide this amount of coating. If heavier coating weights are needed, converters are often the ones to handle this.

Water-based coating technologies have been developed as a result to environmental concerns. Solvent-based methods are not often utilized anymore. They are mostly alcohol-based when they are employed, with butanol being the solvent having the highest boiling point. Coats of primer are used. Using reverse powered gravure rollers, the primer is simultaneously applied to both sides of the film where the coating will be applied to both sides of the film. As it is crucial for the coating to adhere to the underlying film, an adhesive-type coating with antistatic properties typically has a coating weight of less than 1 g m2.

Aluminum-based metallic coating has been available for a while. This is accomplished by turning the aluminum into vapour in a vacuumed room and depositing it for pack-aging reasons on the surface of plastic film, paper, and paperboard. SiOx, a combination of silicon oxides, has recently been thinly coated on various plastic films. Other materials, such DLC, a carbon-based diamond-like coating that has been internally put to PET bottles, are probably going to be researched further for both bottles and film. Another way to apply a plastic coating is through extrusion, albeit this generally relates to applying plastic to other materials like aluminum foil, paper, and paperboard. An active area for innovation is coating as a method for enhancing the qualities of plastic film and containers.

Acrylic finishes

OPP film, in instance, is coated with acrylic paint. The coating is very glossy, glass transparent, durable, and heat sealable. About 100 C is the first sealing temperature. The melting point has a distinct definition. This indicates that the coating won't adhere to heated surfaces but will glide over them readily. A lower sealing strength that is commonly acceptable is 250 g m2/25 mm seal width. This would result in a sealing range of 50 C with a film shrinkage temperature of 150 C. To obtain the optimum runnability in packing machines, certain slip and anti-blocking chemicals must be added into the coating. With a specific gravity close to 1, the coating's average thickness of 1.0 g/m2 results in a thickness of 1 m.

PVdC coatings

PVdC coatings may be altered to provide high-barrier or excellent heat-sealing polymers. Between the needed barrier qualities and the sealing quality, a compromise must be reached. The gas barrier suffers when the polymer is modified to provide a larger sealing range, lowering the sealing threshold to around 110°C. Paper and films are coated with PVdC. The majority of provided general-purpose coatings will have oxygen barrier of around 25 ml m2/24 hr and sealing properties beginning to seal at 120 C. While PVdC often has a high oxygen barrier for PET film, it may not have the best sealing qualities.

To keep the coatings from adhering to the hot sealing surfaces, the formulation must include both silica and waxes as slip and anti-blocking agents. Producers of films often use coating weights of 3 g m2 or 2 m thickness. PVdC has a specific gravity of 1.3. Rigid containers, like the surface of PET beer bottles, may have surface coatings put to them.

PVOH finishes

An alternative high gas barrier has been explored to replace PVdC due to the environmental concern that dioxins may be formed if chlorine-based compounds are burned without changing the coating's characteristics.

Hence, it is probable that films containing PVOH will be utilized as a laminate, with the PVOH on the inside of the web. It is possible to employ BOPP that has an exterior coating of PVOH as long as a protective varnish is applied on top. Moreover, PVOH has no sealing abilities. Nonetheless, it is a fantastic surface for receiving printing inks with little solvent absorption or retention. The coating weights are comparable to PVdC, but the film yield is somewhat greater, and the specific gravity is closer to 1.0.

Coverings that seal at low temperatures

In order to address the requirement for quicker packaging machine speeds, LTSCs for OPP that seal at lower temperatures and have a broader sealing range are needed. These coatings, which are based on ionomer resins and are applied as emulsions, offer an alternative to PVdC and acrylic coatings. Silica and waxes are maintained to a minimum since they are likely to increase the sealing temperature threshold of any coatings, which has the effect of increasing friction on LTSC relative to conventional coatings. As the LTSC does not adhere to or obstruct PVdC or acrylic coatings, it is possible to have films with diverse coatings. Ionomer surfaces do not retain printing ink solvents and have superior ink receptivity.

Aluminum metallization

Films made of plastic that have been directly vacuum-metallized with aluminum have significantly improved barrier characteristics. This is possible because these films are smooth and may be put in a continuous layer of uniform thickness. These film types include PET, PA, and OPP. The time needed to apply the vacuum following a reel change is a significant economic element. Since a wide area can be contained on a reel, this favors 12 m PET. When used with PET, the film may metallize paper and paperboard by transferring from the film with the use of a heated nip roll, and then the PET can be used again.

SiOx finishes

Now, SiOx has been made available as a coating. Excellent barrier qualities are present in this substance. Applying it involves vacuum deposition. SiOx coated PET film is commercially available and is utilized in the retort pouch laminates in Japan. It has good barrier qualities and is clear, retor, and recyclable. Lawson Mardon in Switzerland is working on a coating option that involves plasma pretreatment followed by electron beam evaporation of the silicon.

Moreover, SiOx has been used to coat plastic bottles, resulting in an oxygen barrier that is 20 times stronger than that of an untreated container. Tetrapak's Glaskin method vacuum covers the inside of PET beer bottles as well. Several renowned brewers in Europe have utilized bottles covered in this fashion. According to claims, products with less flavor scalping have a shelf life of at least six months.

DLC

DLC is a relatively new kind of coating. It has a very thin carbon coating on it. The shelf life of PET bottles is less than that of glass in the market for bottled beer. In Japan, there have been several DLC coating trials performed on the inside of PET bottles. There have been observed significant improvements in barrier.

Using PE for extrusion coating

By extrusion coating the film with PE, a heat seal coating may be added to heat-resistant films like PET and PA.

1. Methods for secondary conversion
2. Adhesive-based film lamination

Plastic films are laminated together using an adhesive that may be water-, solvent-, or 100% solids-based to join two or more films. Co-extrusion, in which two or more layers of molten plastic are joined during the production of a film, is replaced by lamination. In an extrusion lamination, it is also feasible to laminate employing molten polymer as both an adhesive and a barrier layer. Lamination without an adhesive is also an option; one such method is the laser lamination of thermoplastics.

Depending on a number of variables, choosing between a laminate and a co-extrusion might be difficult. They consist of:

1. Product requirements in terms of durability and barrier qualities
2. The kind of pack, how it will be managed at each step, and the distance to be covered
3. Although trash created during the production of single films may be recycled, waste produced during the production of coextruded films cannot.

Only surface printing is possible on coextruded film, however reverse printing is possible on one of the films in a laminate, allowing the print to be sandwiched during lamination. According to the film in question, converters may print and laminate in a single, cost-effective operation to assure rub resistance, gloss, and clarity; in cases where this is not feasible, it may be challenging to justify the cost increase resulting from the additional conversion procedure. Nevertheless, the expense of any other strategy, whether it be using a single plastic material or a kind of co-extrusion, to provide the protection the product requires must also be taken into account.

In order to create the necessary barrier, film thickness must be taken into account. If the film is too thick, the increased stiffness might cause sealing issues and handling issues. On the other hand, a thicker material will be stiffer so that it handles and displays better than packaging constructed from a thinner material. Poor thermal transfer may reduce the sealing range, and heat retention after the seal has been created may enable seals to re-open.

The variable tension in each film web will nearly always be highlighted by lamination, and curling in laminates is fairly frequent. The cut edge may need to be flat for many applications where the film is cut and then pushed or pulled to ensure trouble-free feeding through the packing machine.

The literature on laminating and coextrusion is quite extensive. As there are both technical and commercial considerations, the best course of action must be determined case by case. There are many different adhesives available. With their inert surfaces and superior moisture barrier, PVA and other water-based adhesives with a long shelf life may not attach to polyolefines well. If such adhesives are used, a lengthy drying time will be necessary before the laminate can be utilized, and in actuality, one of the substrates should be paper or paperboard to enable the water to dissipate.

Barrier plastics work well with cross-linking adhesives like polyurethanes. The films are typically mixed under pressure using a coating weight of 1-3 g m2 and applied typically from a gravure roller at the end of the printing machine. Careful selection is necessary since carbon dioxide may generate tiny bubbles and degrade the final laminate's aesthetic qualities. There is a chance that the glue may react with the film coatings in certain film structures and cause discoloration.

The providers of the glue and ink should be consulted for guidance in this situation. Adhesion strengths of several hundred grams per 25 mm are typical, and bonding is often permanent.

There is pressure to switch to adhesive solutions that are water-based and made entirely of solids in order to decrease solvent emissions.

Materials that cross-link as a consequence of heat application, UV or EB radiation are known as 100% solids adhesives. Moreover, 100% solids adhesives would include sticky hot melts with wax and EVA component and PE used in extrusion laminating. It is now typical to see the use of a two-stage process for a number of different types of printing, including offset and digital printing. Due to the independence of the systems, processing may be better controlled.

CHAPTER 14

EXTRUSION LAMINATION

[1]Dr. Ishita Auddy, [2]Dr. Sundus Nida1
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India

Email Id- [1]ishita.g@jainuniversity.ac.in

When the PE is still molten, one web of a laminate may be routed through a curtain of molten PE and then merged with a second film layer. Because to the increased thickness of the whole structure, it is feasible to employ a tiny amount of PE as both an adhesive and a way to significantly enhance the stiffness of a laminate. In order to receive the PE and produce bond strengths over 200 g/25 mm2, it is often necessary to prime the surfaces of the films. It may really only be necessary for a laminate's strength to be at least 100 g/25 mm for many applications where the laminate structure is not subjected to extreme pressures. The laminate bond has a constant risk of deteriorating over time, hence the specification has to be set higher than the known minimum need.

Thermoplastic laminate

By putting the films via a heated nip roller system, two webs that have heat-sealing capabilities may be joined together. The ultimate weight of the laminate, in the absence of glue, is equal to that of the original components. As the films may shrink or stretch under stress depending on how hot they are heated, this procedure depends on each film having a low sealing point. Due to one web's somewhat larger shrinking when the films get closer to their elastic limit, curl may form. Depending on the original coatings' nature, bond strengths should be strong. The manufacture of laminates using this method is uncommon in the food business. It is commonly used in the creation of book covers. Laser activation of the surfaces being joined is one particular kind of thermal lamination.

Printing

A description of how plastic films are printed

Up until recently, it seemed that people's printing tastes were regional, with gravure presses being more common in Europe and flexographic presses in North America. As a consequence of how the markets evolved, this could be historical. The flexor method has gained popularity in Europe as the quality of flexo printing has improved with the advent of photopolymer plates and as the market has demanded ever-shorter print runs. Gravure and flexographic combination presses have also grown in popularity. Up to 10 stations are now accessible on gravure reel fed presses and central impression flexographic machines, increasing the number of printing stations.

Printing gravure

The gravure press is made up of a line of printing stations, each of which applies a different color of liquid ink and either cold seal latex or PVdC emulsion. A roller is physically, chemically, electrically, or laser degraded into a tiny cell pattern. These cells house the ink that is drawn from the gravure roller's rotating ink bath. The depth and size of the cell regulate the quantity of ink, and a doctor blade scrapes off any extra ink. To remove the ink from the cells, film is run over the gravure roller while being applied backing pressure by an impression roll or lay-on. To remove any remaining solvents or water medium, the inked film is placed into a hot oven. To complete the pattern, further ink or coating layers are added in register.

Because to the cylinders' durability and ability to duplicate the design precisely, the gravure technology allows for a very high volume of prints. Due to the engraving process, the initial expenses are expensive, but the gravure technique is cost-effective for big batches that can be produced quickly.

Flexible-format printing

Flexographic printing may be done either with the printing rollers organized around a central, large-diameter drum or with a number of printing stations lined up in a straight line. The photochemical plate material-made plates are now fastened to the printing rollers. A capitated anilox roll picks up the ink and transfers it to the printing plate. The film is thereafter exposed to the ink. Flexographic printing is cost-effective because making the plates has comparatively cheap production costs, particularly for small quantities. Reproduction quality has improved and is now on par with gravure printing. The best choice of method for any particular print order has become harder as productivity on both kinds of presses has improved.

Electronic printing

It is now feasible to produce artwork on a computer and then transfer the picture straight to the packaging film thanks to the development of electronic printing equipment and the availability of coatings that can take advantage of the new ink systems. Using a computer, a design is developed; it may be unique or repeated to produce hundreds of impressions. The ink, which is typically in powder form, is drawn to the film surface and set in place by curing. The ink must be received through special coatings. The reverse side of the film has a typical heat-sealable covering, allowing the film to be turned into packages right away. The technology may create test packages for market research or advertising campaigns, although it is currently only suitable for narrow web widths.

Stiff plastic containers with printed labels

Labeling done in-mould

Containers and lids may be manufactured with printed labels on them. The technique has been modified for use in thermoforming, such as in the production of yogurt pots, as well as in blow molding and injection molding, such as in the production of ice cream tubs, lids, and huge biscuit containers.

It is possible to include relief designs into the mold's walls. These patterns may be seen in molded items that have an embossed or debossed appearance. This method is used to imprint the plastic identity needed for waste management program sorting, as well as the mold number and other manufacturer identifiers.

Labelling

In addition to pressure-sensitive plastic, paper, and laminated aluminum foil labels, printed labeling is also often used on other materials. Around pots and tubs, sleeve labels are fastened on or secured with glue. Such containers would need to include elements like a recessed panel in their design to make it easier to see the label. Certain packages are designed to make it simple to separate the plastic pot and paperboard label after usage in order to fulfill waste management requirements.

The printed plastic shrink sleeve is another common method of labeling bottles and jars. They come flat and are printed on reels in tubular shape. Following automated application, the label shrinks firmly around the container as it moves through a hot area.

Printing with dry offset

With this technique, an inked relief plate transfer's ink to a blanket roll, which then transfers the pattern to the plastic surface. This technique was created particularly for printing tapered and rounded containers. Either heat or UV light is used to cure the inks.

Screen printing on silk

A woven mesh made of metal or plastic carries the pattern that will be printed on it. This is put in contact with the object to be printed, and a flexible wiping blade is used to press or squeeze the viscous oil-based ink through the design regions.

Print using a heat transfer

On a PET carrier web, the whole pattern is first printed using heat-sensitive inks. A heated die may then be used to transfer the pattern directly onto plastic containers when this is brought into rapid contact with them. A well-known kind of heat transfer labeling is called Therimage. Heat transfer printing includes hot foil stamping. The object being printed comes into touch with a heat-resistant ink that has an adhesive coating and is transported on a PET film. The picture is transferred to the PET film by pressing a hot metal die on it that has the pattern in relief. You may print a highly shiny metallic picture on this kind of décor. For high-end products like chocolate candy boxes and the labels for liquor and liqueur bottles, hot foil stamping is often employed.

Food contact and barrier properties

The issues

Primary food packaging must safeguard the food so that health is not compromised and the quality is maintained for the anticipated shelf life in addition to maintaining pack integrity, which includes effective closure methods and physical protection throughout storage and distribution. The food product, the packaging, and any potential interactions between the food and the packaging all affect quality in this context. The outcome might be harmful organoleptic and other alterations, which could be brought on by:

Migration of chemicals, leftovers, and monomer molecules into the food from packaging material Permeation of environmental gases, vapours, and permeant molecules into the pack headspace, as well as the reverse the process known as "scalping" involves the sorption of ingredients into the packaging, including lipids and volatile taste chemicals.

Migration

When food items are wrapped, the inner surface of the container comes into direct touch with the food. It is conceivable for food and packaging to interact, and for packaging elements to be absorbed by or to interact with the food. When it comes to plastics, the fundamental polymer may be involved. Even though this polymer is non-reactive with regard to food items, it is still conceivable that coatings and additives used to make and usage of the plastic may interact with the food. As direct food contact is required, it is crucial that the plastic material and related additives have this approval.

Several nations have laws that guarantee the proper product safety processes are followed, maintaining safety for plastics in contact with food. The Federal Food and Drug Administration is responsible for all regulations in the US. A framework directive regulating all plastic materials and items coming into contact with food in the European Union is called Directive 89/109/EEC. The goal is to guarantee that they are produced in accordance with best practices and do not introduce any ingredients into food that might jeopardize public health or cause organoleptic alterations or other unintended changes to the food's character, content, or quality.

In this context, the terms organoleptic and migration are used interchangeably. Organoleptic refers to the taste, texture, flavor, color, or odor of the food product, while migration is the process by which chemical components from the packaging material migrate into the food product.

In the European Union, the use of plastics in contact with food is expressly addressed under EU Directive 90/128 EEC and its amendment 2001/62/EC (see website reference). It comprises definitions, migration restrictions, use restrictions, and restrictions on residues related to certain drugs. A migration restriction is often described in terms of weight released per unit area, such as 10 mg dm2, but in certain cases, such as with caps, gaskets, and stoppers, or in cases where the container's capacity is between 0.5 and 10 litres, the limit is 60 mg kg1 of the food in question.

Regulations for migration testing employing specific food simulants, such as Simulant A: water for watery foods, are laid out in Directive 82/711/EEC.

For acidic meals, Simulant B is 3% w/v acetic acid.

Simulant C: 15% ethanol by volume for alcoholic beverages

Simulant D for fatty/oily meals is rectified olive oil.

In order to identify and quantify the components collected by these procedures, sophisticated analytical and measuring techniques have been created. GLC, mass spectrometry, and IR analysis are a few of them. Moreover, sensory testing panels and these test protocols are used to assess the manufacture and usage of plastic materials and packaging.

Permeation

A film's permeation happens in three stages:

1. Penetration of the penetrant through the surface of the polymer
2. Penetrant diffusion through the polymer and migration
3. Emergence or desorption of a penetrant from the polymer's opposing surface.
4. The solubility of the permeant determines absorption and desorption, and solubility is highest when the penetrant and substance have comparable characteristics.
5. Graham's Law, which asserts that the velocity of diffusion of a gas is inversely related to the square root of the density, is another pertinent theory.
6. According to Fick, the amount of diffusing gas is inversely related to the thickness of the substrate it is diffusing through and is proportional to concentration and duration.
7. Henry's Law says that the partial pressure of the gas is exactly proportional to the quantity of gas absorbed by a given volume of a liquid at a given temperature.

In reality, the film could include many polymers, have pinholes, discontinuities in coatings, and differing molecular structures and levels of crystallinity. The size, shape, and degree of polarity of the penetrant molecules as well as the surrounding environment are important. All of these variables have an influence on solubility and diffusion, both of which directly affect permeability.

Standardized test procedures have been used to determine the permeability of plastic films to moisture vapour and common gases including oxygen, carbon dioxide, and nitrogen. For instance, oxygen may lead to oxidative rancidity in food items that include oil or fat.

In contrast, the escape of water in the vapour phase from a product via the packaging may result in dehydration, textural changes, and weight loss. Water vapour penetration into a product may result in a loss of texture. An illustration of the latter would be a Christmas pudding wrapped in plastic film that would lose moisture while being stored before being sold. In this case, a compromise would need to be made between the weight loss during storage, the initial weight, and the water vapour barrier protection offered by the plastic film. In this case, in addition to texture and flavor preservation, the actual weight at the moment of sale would also need to comply with legal requirements. The results of permeability testing provide recommendations for the selection of material for the packaging of certain food items. Surprising outcomes may occur from the presence of some additional penetrants and the impact of polymer additives like plasticizers. In order to determine how well the food under consideration would function in real-world situations, shelf life tests must still be conducted.

Alterations in flavor

Food producers must guarantee that their goods are clean, devoid of odors, and untainted. In order to avoid contaminants from the outside environment from altering the flavor, scent, or taste of the food, this has ramifications for the packaging that is utilized. An example would be the covering of boxes carrying tea bags with PVdC-coated BOPP film. Scalping could cause flavor to be lost. Here, organic substances either soak into the package or are adsorbed onto the surface of the packaging material. Any intrusion of undesirable flavors and odors from the outside environment may conceal the flavor or chemically alter it by absorption through the packing material or movement of contaminated components. Furthermore, oxidation and moisture gain or loss may alter food. As a result, a key characteristic of the packing material is its permeability to the transfer of oxygen and moisture. The rate of transmission is influenced by both permeation theory and the surrounding temperature.

1. Closure and capacity to seal
2. Introduction to closure and sealability

The protection and integration of the product are the primary goals of packaging. It follows that the pack has to be tightly sealed. This may be done with plastic packaging on the packing line either by heat sealing, applying a closure, such a screw cap, or using some kind of adhesive system. The packaging system's effective operation is one of the most underappreciated aspects of the manufacturing process. Many times, sealing or closing systems are assumed to work without any thought given to the relationship between the material and the machine. Seldom is the equipment manufacturer involved in discussions about the requirements of the proposed material or container. Hence, coordination between production, engineering, purchasing, product R&D, marketing, and packaging technologists, as well as suppliers of machinery and packaging, is required at the earliest possible time. To come up with the best answer, there may need to be some sacrifices.

Seals with heat

Effective shelf life and product protection depend on how well the packaging is sealed. The thickness of the film web affects sealing power. Doubling the base film thickness practically doubles the seal strength with the same coating. Contrarily, under typical sealing circumstances, the temperature sealing range is limited by how thick the material is. The thicker film prevents heat from flowing as readily to melt the sealing coating or polymer, and when heated, the film holds onto the heat to keep the sealant fluid, which has a negative impact on the strength of the hot seal. Moreover, thick film needs greater force to be bent and come into close contact, especially when using crimp jaws like those found on f/f/s machines. Seal strength and integrity are significantly influenced by jaw design. Although a flat seal jaw may be the ideal, in reality, this is only the case if the seals don't have any folds or tucks. In both vertical and horizontal f/f/s machines, crimp jaws are utilized to account for changes in film thickness. As a part of the in-line quality function, seal integrity may now be assessed by testing the pack under pressure or vacuum to see how fast air or oxygen will travel through the seals. The time and pressure needed to modify the pack integrity must be evaluated practically.

Flat jaw sealing

The ideal sealing circumstances balance dwell duration with the jaws' temperature and pressure. The sealant must be heated up with enough energy to fuse together and form one medium. To create a flawlessly formed seal with minimal temperature distortion and an equal seal strength across the sealed region, heat conduction and heat flow properties must be carefully matched. The amount of energy input depends on the temperature and time. A low temperature applied for a long time, together with a high pressure to eliminate air from between the film surfaces, is appropriate for heat-sensitive films like PE and cast PP. The tolerance in dwell time, sealing temperature, and pressure is substantially larger with films since they have a broad temperature-sealing range.

To accomplish the fastest possible polymer melting, heat should, wherever feasible, be delivered to both surfaces. To prevent molten polymer from adhering to the heating surfaces and tearing the freshly formed seal apart, sealing surfaces must have strong release qualities. One option is to employ one heated surface in the form of a constant temperature metal bar, with a flat or curved profile, sealing against a rubber-faced anvil. With PE, it's important to prevent straining the seal while the polymer is still fluid, hence many machines are designed to clamp the seal while the film cools down below the sealing temperature or to use an air cooling blast. When employing OPP films, when the film's core is not being melted, an efficient seal is created by fusing two surface coatings that flow together or the sealant polymers of a coextruded film. It is just essential to make sure that fluid coatings are not strained in order to prevent the new seal from being destroyed since the core will offer the seal stiffness. In actuality, the issue is solved by pulling the jaws apart perpendicular to the film. It is best to avoid sliding film over hot metal while it is being pressured since the coating can adhere to the metal. The remedy is often to make sure that only point contact is made between the heated metal and the film if it is difficult to prevent the film from sliding over metal when pressure is applied. Roughness reduces or prevents hot-sticking on the machine. The idea is to prevent complete air exclusion between the contact surfaces, which might be brought on by coatings that flow freely and produce a vacuum. Avoid using highly polished sealing surfaces. This seems to go against the usual of polishing surfaces to make them more slippery, yet this is really the case on many machines.

Although not impacting the sealing function, a good film formulation with a balance of slip agents in the coating should minimize or eliminate hot stick issues. Since the temperature sealing range is small and very near to the melting point of an oriented film, precise control of jaw temperature is crucial.

When a plastic film, such as PVdC coated OPP, is used to wrap a carton, there is only room for one heated surface, and the stiffness of the carton provides the pressure required for sealing. To prevent the envelope-shaped end folds of the film from shrinking during sealing and becoming wrinkled and unattractive, precise jaw temperature control is crucial.

Jaw clenches in a crimp

Nevertheless, as machines must handle a broad variety of films without modifying or resetting mechanical characteristics, a compromise is always necessary. Ideally, certain plastic film materials should have a specific crimp jaw specification for each thickness. The stresses on the crimp jaw slopes change as a result of the variable thickness films' capacity to maintain crimp jaws apart by varying distances, which results in distortion or variability in the seal's performance. While the crimp jaws are hot, at temperatures near to the chosen sealing temperature, they should be adjusted to the appropriate separation and spring pressures or loadings established. Knives shouldn't be set to cut through the films until after that.

PP films produced for stents are more extensible in the MD, with an average elongation before break of more than 150% and a transverse elongation of 70%. Transverse jaw grooves in form-fill-seal machines improve performance and seal integrity by reducing stress in the TD and allowing greater extension in the MD.

Obscure cavitated Stenter-made films are seen to have a higher propensity to split across the film in crimp jaws that stress the film over its elastic limit. As the film does not lengthen as well in the TD as it does in the MD, shallower angled jaws with a sinusoidal shape and an angle of 120° have been created to reduce stress. These patterns are in opposition to blown-oriented films, whose extensibility is more nearly 100% in each direction. At the upper end of sealing circumstances, high pressure conditions and the reduced heat stability of bubble-made OPP will still provide the same result. Because of their better heat stability and very broad sealing ranges, PET and nylon PA films often do not develop broken seals. Cast and low-melting point polymers' easy flow characteristics are taken advantage of when PE or cast PP is used as a laminate's sealant. Molten polymer may cover any gaps or holes in the seal by flowing into cracks. Although many pouches can employ overlapping seals, the lamin- ates' inability to seal inside to outer layers restricts the application to f/f/s with fin seals throughout the length, which requires a little bit more material due to the additional width of film needed. The sealing range of coated OPP has been increased to over 70°C because to the use of ionomer emulsions with low melting temperatures of approximately 80°C and high levels of hot tack. The highest sealing limit is determined by the film's shrinkage, which is thought to be 150°C. Acryl-coated films had a maximum temperature range of 50°C with a starting point of 100°C, which allowed for 50 m/min linear packing rates.

High temperatures are common with fast packing rates because they quickly melt the sealant. The film is harmed by the high temperature of the sealing jaws when the machine speed fluctuates. Lower heat settings are feasible with the LTS coating, preventing film degradation at slower speeds. Because of the low sealing threshold, crimp jaws may be used to seal with very little dwell time at lower temperatures, preventing film shrinking. Film rates of 100 m min1 are possible since the energy needed to form a seal is, in fact, considerably lower than with other coatings. Fin seals are the only applications that can be used with LTS coatings since they will not seal to other media. If the film rips while the seal is under stress, the seal is generally seen to be robust enough. Seals provide inherent signs of tampering, however packets may still be opened with ease, particularly in the case of oriented films due to their propensity for rapid rip propagation. There is a school of thinking that claims the pack is still intact and still works even if the seal slightly opens up and absorbs the tension without ripping. In this instance, tamper evidence is less clear. A minimum seal strength requirement of 300 g/25 mm is usual in all situations of packaging tiny and low weight items utilizing films or coatings that do not flow too easily during sealing. Products with heavier weights and those that flow easily, such nuts, grains, pulses, and frozen vegetables, may need seal strengths more than 1000 g/25 mm.

Intuitive sealing

During impulse sealing, a brief, intense electric impulse heats the jaws to fusion temperature. Under pressure, the seal region gets cooled while still being clamped. While they may be doubled up, impulse seals are typically thinner than hot bar seals. The impulse approach could provide a better seal when a little amount of pollution is present. The voltage and time are adjusted for the material.

To create welded seals, PE films may be sealed with wires or strips that have been impulse-heated. The heating strip has to be covered if the seal isn't to be cut through the web because else the molten polymer would cling to the hot metal strip and ruin the seal. To do this, a release sheet, such as PTFE-coated glass fiber woven fabric, is placed over the strip. The final seals have a film strength of 100%. Coextruded OPP may be utilized to create the same sort of seals utilizing PE sealing machinery, however the seals are more vulnerable to tearing in close proximity to the seal because of the typical easy tear propagation induced by high stress orientation.

Hot wheel sealing

The material to be sealed is dragged past a heated wheel in this kind of heat sealing. The pressure is maintained on the seal region until the area has cooled and a seal has formed.

Sealants for hot air

The plastic in the seal region is melted using hot air that has been heated by gas or electricity. Paperboard that has been covered with plastic is sealed using it.

Flame sealers for gas

Gas flames are used in this kind of sealing to melt the plastic in the heat seal region. Compared to hot air sealing, it is less noisy and more heat-efficient.

Thermo-sealing

To heat seal a diaphragm to the rim of a plastic, glass, or plastic-based jar or bottle, a plastic or plastic-based heat-sealing layer is laminated or coated onto aluminum foil, which is already present in the closure. When the closure is placed on the container and run through a high-frequency induction sealing head, heat is produced in the aluminum foil, melting the plastic and heat-sealing it to the lid.

Sealing using ultrasound

In contrast to high-frequency induction heating, heat is produced here by molecular friction inside the plastic substance itself. The corners of paperboard trays with plastic coatings have had their corners sealed using this theory.

Chilly seal

As previously mentioned, the right combination of time, temperature, and pressure is necessary for sealing. Cold seal latex is the sealer of choice when high-speed packaging is necessary and the product is heat-sensitive, such as a chocolate bar or ice cream with a chocolate coating. On the backside where the seals are to be produced, the adhesive is put in a pattern that is precisely aligned with the print on the exterior. According to this standard, either a release lacquer or a release film laminated as the top layer of a laminate must be applied over the print on a single web film.

Closures made of plastic for bottles, jars, and tubs

The most popular kind of screw cap used in food packaging is injection moulded from PP. PE is used where a flexible snap-on function is needed, such as with an ice cream tub or as a reclosure after opening an extended shelf life box. Wine bottle corks made of plastic are made of PE.

The PP material's ability to hinge has been used to create a closure that stays in touch with the container. Containers containing items like salt, pepper, spices, and herbs that are released from the container come in a broad range of styles. The thermoplastic PS, which is tougher and glossier than PP, is another material used for closures. Thermosetting plastic closures provide the closest tolerance in terms of dimensions, albeit they are more often employed for aesthetic and medicinal closures. A tamper-evident feature may be included into the design of the majority of plastic closures.

CHAPTER 15

ADHESIVE SYSTEMS USED WITH PLASTICS

[1]Dr. Ishita Auddy, [2]Dr. Adarsha H, [3]Dr. Sundus Nida
[1,2]Assistant Professor, Department of Food Technology, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India
[3]Assistant Professor, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Jain (Deemed to be University) Banagalore, India

Email Id- [1]ishita.g@jainuniversity.ac.in

A plastic tie or grafting layer that is used in extrusion coating and extrusions to encourage adhesion Dry bond adhesives for plastic substrate laminations in which the solvent is removed before fusing the surfaces together. After the lamination process is complete, heat-curing adhesives, which are 100% solids, work by cross-linking to the solid state. Hot melt adhesives for putting labels, which include plastic components. In packing lines, folding cartons are assembled and sealed using hot melt adhesives. PVA water-based adhesives for side-sealing folding cartons during conversion, including those constructed from paperboard with one side of PE coating that has undergone corona discharge treatment

Systems for pressure- and heat-sensitive labels.

How to choose

Identifying the product's packaging requirements is essential for effective food packaging. These have to do with the product's characteristics, the target market, shelf life, distribution, and storage, the final consumer's place of purchase, as well as the usage and eventual disposal of the package. Environmental and waste management concerns should be considered before making the decision. It is crucial to ensure food safety with regard to biological threats and requirements for flavor, color, and texture.

1. You may think about your packaging demands in terms of:
2. Product protection, including quality and safety.
3. Presentation, including box design and sales marketing.
4. Production processes include extrusion, shaping, printing, and packaging.

The second choice is the kind of plastic or mix of plastics required to suit the functional demands after deciding on a kind of plastic pack from the variety of options, such as a film sachet, lidded tray, bottle, etc. Performance is dependent on the pack's structural layout and whether it is constructed of expanded plastic, film, sheet, or a mould. As we've seen, there are a variety of plastics with various qualities, and there are variations within each form of packaging.

All plastics act as barriers against the passage of gaseous and volatile substances from the outside world into hermetically sealed packages as well as from food products entering and exiting the packages into the outside world. The kind of plastic, its thickness, the temperature and relative humidity ranges that the product will be exposed to during its lifetime, as well as the food product, will all have an impact on how these impacts manifest. Certain polymers are heat sealable, allowing packs to be sealed, while others are heat resistant, allowing for specific uses such microwave reheating, radiant heat, and retort sterilization. Some are suitable for deep-freeze preservation. Within the boundaries of the usage restrictions, many specific demands may be satisfied. This sort of article may inform readers about their options and serve as a starting point for fruitful dialogues amongst engineers, whether they are consumers or providers of plastic packaging.

Retort bag

Packaging creativity

This article discusses the retort pouch as an illustration and case study of the integrated approach including packaging materials, their conversion, shaping, filling, and sealing along with the processes and technology required to develop any new form of product/packaging presentation. The retort pouch is a thermally processed food container that is rectangular, flexible, laminated plastic, and four sides hermetically sealed. It is a portable, high-quality, sturdy, useful, and shelf-stable pack. Retort pouches are successfully used commercially in a number of nations, notably Japan, for a broad range of food products. They were first created in America in the 1950s and 1960s thanks to research and support from the US Army.

Retort pouches are constructed of either foil-free plastic laminate films or plastic laminates holding aluminum foil. They have to be inert, dimensionally stable, heat sealable, and heat resistant to at least 121°C for average procedure periods. They should be physically robust, with low oxygen and water vapour permeability, and excellent aging qualities.

Applications

Several nations utilize retort pouches for a broad variety of processed shelf-stable goods, including solid meat packs like polonies, sliced beef in gravy, premium dinners, seafood, sauces, soups, vegetables, fruits, beverages, and baked goods. Markets for pouches now include:

Retail packets weighing up to 450 g are available for indoor and outdoor usage. Particularly for vegetables, where great visibility is preferred and a short shelf life of 4 weeks to 6 months is acceptable, foil-free pouches have been used. For assessing shelf life in these situations, oxygen permeability takes precedence over other factors, however light also matters in terms of product browning and the start of rancidity. Fruit juices and other beverages, soups, and sauces have all been packaged in self-standing pouches.

For prepared vegetable goods like carrots, peeled potatoes, and potato chips, large catering size pouches for the institutional trade up to a capacity of 3.5 kg, roughly similar to the A 10 can, have found a practical use. The pouch's comparatively simpler disposal after usage is especially advantageous in the catering and institutional industries.

Provision of military field rations.

Retort pouches may be used to process heat-sensitive items that are presently not suitable for canning due to reduced heat exposure, particularly in high-temperature/short-time processing where there are potential for the best possible nutrition and flavor preservation. Japan is by far the largest manufacturer, producing around 1 billion pouches annually. There are many different goods packaged, including popular recipes such curries, stews, hashes, prepared meats, fish in sauce, and mixed vegetables. The following are a few elements that helped pouches succeed in the Far East:

When these packs were first created, refrigerated facilities were few, especially in residences, which led to a need for ambient shelf items. Lower barrier pouches are now utilized for items with a shorter shelf life in refrigerated storage due to the rising usage of refrigerators.

1. Due to social changes, working housewives are seeking convenience.
2. The acceptance of foods like sauces, which can be pumped and are best in pouches.

In comparison, the current market is somewhat tiny in Europe and North America. Products like roti, prepared meats, smoked sausage, smoked salmon, fish, pet food, entrée meals, vegetables, and diced and sliced apples are among the main uses. A well-established frozen food chain, the popularity of competing frozen meals of a similar sort, and highly automated, economically efficient canning plants are all blamed for the lack of market expansion.

Both benefits and drawbacks

The following benefits are mentioned:

1. As compared to can production, pouch manufacturing uses less energy.
2. The cost of moving empty containers is lower.
3. Packaging costs less than equal cans, and with a carton, the price is comparable.
4. It is simple to modify the size of filling lines.
5. As the contents are ambient shelves, refrigeration is not necessary.
6. Packed packet is smaller and uses 10% less shelf space.
7. Pouches have a smaller bulk, needless syrup or brine, and are less expensive to transport.
8. By submerging the pack in hot water, the contents may be quickly reheated. No pans to wash
9. Suitable for single part packing and serving size control, opens simply by ripping or cutting
10. Materials for retort pouches are not corrosive.
11. Convenient for using military rations and for outdoor recreation. Moreover, there are certain drawbacks, including:
12. A significant investment in new capital equipment for filling and processing is necessary to attain cannery output efficiency comparable to that.
13. Common can seamers often produce products at a rate that is less than half that of a single filler/sealer.
14. The adoption of new handling practices must be made, and this may be challenging.
15. There are restrictions on pouch size to maintain quick heat penetration as heat processing becomes increasingly crucial and sophisticated.
16. Often, individual exterior wrapping of some kind is necessary, which raises the price.
17. Due to their non-rigid nature, certain fruits lose their form.
18. Being a novel idea, marketing must include educating the customer about proper storage and usage.

Making of pouches

Pouches may be made from reels of laminated material using in-line form, fill, and seal equipment at the packer's factory, or you can buy pre-formed individual pouches that have been cut, notch, and three sides sealed. In order to form a pouch, the laminate material is folded with the polyester side facing out, the bottom and side seals are heated, and the pouch is then cut. A different method is to link two webs, heat seal their surfaces together, then cut and separate them. The most used technique is hot bar sealing. To make it easier for the customer to open, notches are created in the side seal at either the top or bottom. Modern pouches are designed with rounded edges to lessen the risk of perforation brought on by pouch to pouch contact. Furthermore, rounded corner seals may be used. In order to save energy and provide convenience, the pouch's four-seal flat form and small cross section are created to take advantage of quick heat penetration during sterilization and on warming, prior to consumption.

Moreover, the flat design makes heat sealing simple and encourages good seal fidelity. It's a good idea to have a back-up plan in place, especially if you're going to be traveling a lot.

Upright standing pouches may be designed with fin seals and specific gusset characteristics, although doing so results in several seal junctions and a higher risk of seal problems. Nonetheless, a few of these upright pouches may be bought commercially. The size and volume of pouches may vary widely. A 200 g pouch's nominal thickness after filling ranges from around 12 mm to 33 mm for a 1 kilogram capacity. As per best practices, there should be no void or headspace inside 40 mm of the pouch entrance, therefore some unused package capacity must be accounted for.

Sealing and completing

Vertically filled pouches are in-line and ready-made. For liquid items, vertical form-fill-seal machines may be employed. Another technique uses a web of pouch material that is molded into numerous contiguous chambers on a horizontal substrate. While the seal regions are protected, the voids are filled. Very helpful for filling placeable items is this technique. With a second web supplied from the reel, the filled holes are then concurrently sealed from the top. The following are the prerequisites for filling:

The pouch must be handed neatly and properly opened to the filling station, where the solids are filled first and the liquid component is often filled at a separate station.

1. Adjusting the filler proportions and fill-nozzle design to the product
2. Drip-free nozzles
3. The sealing surfaces are protected.
4. From the bottom up filling
5. Specification and weight control in accordance with the required maximum pouch thickness
6. Uniformity in the formulation, temperature, and viscosity of the product

Before filling, reaeration.

Similar to fillers, seals and sealing equipment are continuously improved, and production rates have increased from 30 to 60 pouches per minute to 120–150 pouches per minute at the moment. Hot bar and impulse sealing are the two popular, effective sealing techniques that are used in sealers. Both techniques employ opposing jaws to clamp the pouch material and produce a fused seal by applying heat and pressure to the opposing seal surfaces. The materials and equipment utilized will determine the precise pouch-sealing conditions, however it is crucial to monitor the seal temperature, jaw pressure, and dwell duration. In order to seal a pouch, air must typically be removed, either by steam flushing, generating a vacuum in a closed space, or, in the case of liquid food items, and simply flattening the pouch by pressing it between two vertical plates. During retorting, effective air removal avoids ballooning and rupturing. Moreover, too much air might hinder the passage of heat. A seal region free of contamination is crucial, even if a very little amount of condensate moisture may be allowed. No matter how the bag is presented for sealing, station grippers engage on each side to extend the opening and avoid creases. Afterwards the closing sealing is done. After sealing, cooling is crucial to avoid the seal region wrinkling.

Every seal, including side, bottom, and closing seals, has to undergo routine testing. The hermetically sealed can is dry. Seals may be visually inspected, and sample pouches should frequently go through Sui test jig internal pressure resistance testing. The seals produced in this manner shouldn't considerably give. The different seals' 13 mm portions, which are routinely cut, should be frequently tested for satisfactory seal tensile qualities. Visual inspections are seldom completely effective, at best. Nonetheless, a low incidence of faults may be ensured by inspecting every pouch both before and after retorting. Using an ultrasonic approach, channel leaks, product contamination, and faulty seals may be found.

Processing

Pressure vessels or retorts that are heated by steam are used for processing. To avoid needless straining of the pouch seals, certain pre-cautions are essential. They make use of trays that regulate pouch thickness and superimposed air pressure. Internal pressure buildup in the bag during processing is countered by overpressure. This becomes especially crucial at the conclusion of the cycle, when cooling starts and the product is at its warmest. Moreover, overpressure inhibits the growth of vapour bubbles in the product but cannot prevent them by avoiding agitation and movement of the pouch walls, which might put strain on the seals. One of the following provides the heating system:

Water that has been heated by steam while being under pressure

Mixtures of air and steam.

It is crucial to keep the air in the pouch at the moment of closure to a practical minimum since too much air might impair how well heat penetrates the material during processing. While retorting pouches, it's critical to precisely regulate and record temperature and pressure using instrumentation and control valve systems. Control of the process cycle automatically is desirable. While vertical batch retorts are an option, horizontal batch retorts are the most popular. Japan has developed fully automated steam/air processing equipment that enable high temperature/short time processing at 135°C and above. Specialties based on milk and dairy products have prospects thanks to this brief high temperature treatment.

Trays or racks should not have sharp edges or rough surfaces, and they should be made of non-corrosive materials. While pouches absorb heat more quickly than cans with comparable capacities, even little variations in pouch thickness can have a significant impact on the deadly temperature reached throughout the thermal process. For instance, a 2 mm difference in thickness may affect the FO value by 1.5 minutes. Because of this, specifically created trays or racks that allow for the simple installation of pouches in separate compartments while giving, on stacking, predicted maximum pouch thickness, positively regulate pouch dimension. The typical tray design includes a false bottom and enough empty space in the supporting surface to ensure that each pouch is exposed to the heating medium to the fullest extent possible. In order to prevent the surface of the pouch from collapsing into the holes and changing the maximum thickness of the pouch, the maximum diameter of voids in the supporting surface should be less than the size of solid product sections.

The most typical pouch orientation is horizontal because it favors a consistent section throughout the pouch surface and provides for the least amount of strain on seals. Nonetheless, vertical bag arrangement in racks is also used. The essential need is that the system permits adjustment of the heating medium's thickness and unfettered movement around each pouch. The trays are placed on trolleys in batch systems and piled on top of one another. They are then transported onto horizontal retorts on tracks. Before the retort is shut, several trolley loads are inserted. In continuous retort systems, pouch carriers or compartments are connected to conveyor chains that pass through locks to enter and exit the processing area similarly to how cans do. These carriers provide the same control over thickness and exposure to the heating liquid as batch retorts, which were previously stated.

Procedure selection

The conductivity of the food and the geometric form of the container are two important factors in heat transmission. In order to determine the procedure for conventional cans, the well-known General Method and the Formula Method of Ball apply equally to retort pouches. As a result, FO values provided for items in cans are sufficient for the same product in pouches. Instead of using a finite cycle, as in the case of the can, the mathematical method to process determination of heat transfer into the retort pouch is that of transfer into a thin slab. Although these common mathematical techniques may help with process design, they cannot completely replace testing for innoculated packs or adequate heat penetration. The procedure utilized for the retort pouch should be based on the thickest pouch that a given racking system would support and intentionally include overfilled units to the extent that it is likely to occur. The test pouches must always be placed at previously identified slow heating areas in any stack of trays and the worst case scenario must always be considered when planning heat penetration testing. Heat distribution studies must be conducted in order to obtain information on the uniformity of heat distribution in a certain retort.

In a retort, temperature changes between points should ideally not exceed 1°C. To make sure that all changes in crucial factors that are expected to occur in production are taken into consideration, the heat penetration estimate must be repeated many times. In addition to the aforementioned, it is advised to increase all process-recommended parameters by 10% as a safety precaution.

Post-retort management

After pressure cooling and removal from the retort on racks or trays, the pouches need to be dried, checked, and put in some kind of outer packaging. The combination of pack residual temperature to promote evaporation and a series of high velocity air knives in a dryer to force out the remaining moisture allows pouches to be dried. Dry bag seals may then be visually examined once again for leaks, rips, or weak spots that may have developed during retorting. The individual pouches shouldn't need to be handled manually in this situation. There are systems available for moving the pouches from retort racks to conveyor belts, then to pouch dryers and onto inspection convey- ors before secondary packing.

Retort pouches may be secondary packaged for storage and distribution by placing each pouch in a printed carton or, alternatively, by placing many pouches in a transport box that may include vertical dividers. To prevent the risks of leaker spoiling caused by external microbiological contamination from the environment, personnel, or customers, separate pouches in cartons are advised. The custom in Europe and Japan suggests that the retail sale of naked or unwrapped pouches is still feasible without a discernible practical increase in spoilage. A paperboard folder, or envelope, in which the individual pouch is affixed, has been used for US military field rations. In addition to enabling non-destructive visual examination and reclosure, this also significantly improves the pouch's abuse resilience, even under rigorous military usage.

Life span

Although a variety of variables, including storage temperature and the barrier qualities of the specific film employed, affect shelf life, it is often simple to achieve good shelf stability of more than two years for a variety of items in foil carrying pouches. The product quality ratings of US military meals evaluated over a two-year period at 20°C revealed no discernible deterioration. Certain goods have been successfully kept for up to seven years while still being safe and palatable.

In accordance with the oxygen permeability of the specific laminate utilized and the sensitivity of the product, foil-free laminates will exhibit shelf stability. Yet, commercial experience has shown that a product may be stable for four to six months. The shelf life of products in foil-free pouches has been successfully extended by nitrogen flushing of the outside container. Retort pouches are well equipped to withstand harsh circumstances provided they are properly packed, according to extensive testing conducted under combat situations by the US Army.

Years of commercial experience in Europe and Japan demonstrate that pouches operate on par with rigid metal cans when distributed securely via conventional trade channels. Perhaps the most tried-and-true food packing method is the retort pouch. It has achieved everything that was anticipated when it was initially designed, as shown by its adoption as the only kind of field rations for the US Army. This succinct overview of the coordinated operations required to sell the retort pouch demonstrates their complexity and is characteristic of all significant advancements in food processing and packaging. Several significant food processing and packaging initiatives, such as those involving aseptic packaging, frozen food packaging, etc., have adhered to similar principles.

Environmental problems and waste management

Advantage to the environment

Around 50% of food is wrapped in plastic or plastic-based materials, and the major advantage of plastic food packaging in terms of the environment is that it prevents food waste. The most major environmental benefit is decreasing resource waste, while there are other advantages as well, such as large weight savings in packing waste when plastic packaging is used instead of other kinds of packaging. The use of plastics for food packaging has a good environmental stance on the ancillary concerns of sustainable development, resource consumption, and the effects on manufacturing and waste management.

Sustainable development

The total plastics industry helps to realize the objectives of sustainable development. This topic is outside the purview of this discussion, but a reference to, for instance, the Association of Plastics Manufacturers in Europe website at www.apme.org will highlight the numerous ways that plastics conserve resources and offer opportunities for economic growth, social advancement, and environmental protection. 37% of plastics are used in packaging in Europe, with food packaging accounting for the majority of this utilization. Polypropylene used in food packaging protects food and offers convenience and choice.

Reducing resources through light weighting

The use of less packing material to obtain a comparable or superior performance is known as resource minimization or light weighting. Examples of plastic packaging that is lightweight include:

The weight of the typical plastic yogurt container decreased from 11.8 grams in 1970 to 5.0 grams in 1990.

Due to increased strength, reductions in the thickness or gauge of plastic film used for the same purpose—from 180 mm to 80 mm—have been made.

The Ecolean material, which contains PE and 40% chalk, is an example of resource minimization. By using less energy and more PE, this material achieves comparable performance in applications for standard PE packaging.

In contrast to the 1400 g utilized ten years ago, the average weight of stretch film used for pallet wrapping is currently 350 g.

In the INCPEN paper "Packaging reduction accomplishing more with less," further instances are included.

As comparison to other kinds of packaging, the small weight of plastic packaging lowers the cost of trans- port of packaging material and packed product, as well as the related fuel consumption and emissions.

Manufacturing of plastics and life cycle analysis

The plastics industry asserts that production consumes less energy than clean processes like glass making and the smelting of metal ores, for example. In comparison to the processing of metal and glass, the conversion energy required to create plastic items from pellets is similarly minimal. Compared to prepare packaging like glass or metal containers, flexible packaging is more energy-efficient. This is due to:

Transport of flexible packaging to the packer may be either flat or in reel form. In comparison, more energy is used to manage the packaging waste that results from packing products in non-plastic packaging and to pack them grossly. By using LCA, these characteristics may be statistically assessed. LCA was conducted using a technique that has been universally accepted and is based on ISO Specifications. It is split into two halves. Initially, an audit, or eco-profile, is created of all resources, including raw materials, energy, and emissions of products, waste heat, and emissions to air, water, and solid waste, leaving a system that has been previously established. Many research have been done, and the plastics industry has been active in this field. An evaluation of the process or system's environmental effect is included in the second stage of LCA. Our knowledge and awareness of environmental effect, which may have local, regional, and global repercussions, are continually improving.

Managing trash from plastics

Management of plastic trash introduction

Plastic goods that are returnable, refillable, and reusable are now in use. PET beverage bottles are returnable in Sweden. Plastic trays, pallets, and cartons used for distribution may all be returned and used again. The quantity of plastic in the trash stream will be decreased with further development of this idea. As thermoplastics can be melted and reused, there is very little plastic waste produced during manufacturing. The primary worry is the 40% of the market for plastic materials that are utilized for packaging, and in particular the percentage that results in household waste or rubbish. Plastic trash accounts for between 5-7% of household garbage in the UK, according to research.

Due to the wide variety of plastics, recovering residential plastic trash is a practical difficulty. The price of virgin plastics, the low weight to volume ratio, which raises handling costs, and the fact that the garbage is generated across a wide geographic region are additional issues that impact the commercial feasibility of plastics waste recovery. In Europe, recycling rates for plastic packaging trash are increasing year over year. Eight nations had rates higher than 50%, with the global average being at 46%. Holland 100%, Switzerland 98%, Denmark 88%, and Germany 74% had the highest rates.

Recycling is not recovery per se. Composting, energy recovery, or reuse of the material are all examples of recycling. The average percentage of recycled plastic in all types of garbage in Europe, including packaging, is 36%. Recycling accounts for 13% of it, while energy-recovery incineration accounts for 23%. The remaining 64% is either disposed of in a landfill or burned without energy recovery.

Plastics must be separated from other plastics in order to be recycled as material. PET bottles and HDPE milk bottles are the types of plastic food packaging that are recycled the most. Both occur in huge quantities and can be quickly processed, making the operation profitable. For reuse, the plastic is reground. Another name for this procedure is mechanical recycling. Around 50 000 tonnes of PE film are recovered in the UK and used to manufacture black sacks for trash collection and film for the construction industry.

In 2000, 17.9% of packaging trash in Europe was mechanically reground, which is a little greater percentage than for all plastics. The use of sorted material for food packaging is nonetheless limited by the risk of contamination in mixed plastic packaging trash.

Energy restoration

Compared to new plastic, old plastic has a high thermal content. In comparison to coal, which has a typical value of 31 MJ kg1, the average value for polymers discovered in household garbage is 38 MJ kg1. Steam is produced during incineration with energy recovery, and it may be utilized to heat structures and create power. The advantage of this is that plastics don't need to be separated from other trash. Also utilized as fuel in the manufacture of cement is plastic trash. Making fuel pellets out of combined plastic debris and other combustibles like scrap paper and board is another method of energy recovery. This substance is sometimes referred to as fuel obtained from waste.

As previously mentioned, the average percentage of recycled plastics burned with energy recovery in Europe was 23%, although there were wide variances in performance, with Switzerland achieving 73%, Denmark achieving 75%, and Germany achieving 26%. Nonetheless, in terms of quantity, France processed the most plastics by this method (32%).

Concerns regarding potential contaminants from the incineration of municipal trash have been voiced. The strict mandated international safety limitations may be met with technology, and some nations, including Sweden, Germany, and Holland, have lately announced intentions to increase the capacity.

Recycling of feedstock

Advanced recycling technology also refers to the chemical and feedstock recycling of polymers made from petroleum. These words refer to a variety of procedures that employ heat to break down polymers into smaller molecules that may then be used as a feedstock to create new petrochemicals and plastics. Pyrolysis, glycolysis, hydrolysis, and methanolysis are examples of processes. PE and PP depolymerization is comparable to thermal cracking, a typical oil refinery operation. Only the lack of oxygen may cause it.

The topic has sparked curiosity all throughout the globe. The methods, which are viewed as being complementary to mechanical recycling, are designed to manage contaminated plastic waste materials. Feedstock recycling, in the words of the American Plastics Council, "represents a substantial technical advance- ment that, in the case of certain polymers, is already augmenting current mechanical recycling methods."

Due to the necessity for a dependable, continuous supply of trash and economic reasons, development of feedstock recycling proceeds slowly. There are now just a few facilities in Europe, and 329 000 tonnes were processed there in 2000. The DSD's collection of domestic plastic garbage is used in the process. There are two programs in use. Initially, as a reductant in a blast furnace used to produce iron and steel, and then at the SVZ gasification facility used to make methanol. In order to process 15 kt of PET bottles and turn them into a polyolefin solvent for use in the manufacturing of polyurethane, a feedstock recycling facility in France was scheduled to open in 2002.

On a pilot basis, a variety of procedures have proven effective. These companies include Texaco, BASF, and a group of BP.

Long-term supply agreements with the proper gate-fee are required in order to invest in commercial units. Up to now, these logistical and financial problems have limited full-scale development. The recycling of PET bottles as a feedstock to create monomer suitable for the manufacturing of bottle grade plastic is projected to receive the majority of new commercial investments. PET bottles are presently recycled mechanically on a large scale, however because to concerns about food contamination, the result is mostly utilized for textile applications. For bottles, there is some particularly permitted processing. Several beverage producers want to recycle more sophisticated and colorful bottle constructions, including coextruded PET beer bottles, in addition to having recycled material in their bottles. The creation of a committed supply of waste streams is still a difficulty.

Biodegradable plastics

Commercially accessible biodegradable polymers are available. Yet, there is debate about their contribution to the use of plastic in general and to food packing in particular. Some believe their usage will solve the trash issue, however humans, not packaging, are the real culprits. It goes against the recommended strategy for the reuse, recovery, and recycling of plastic trash as a more sustainable environmental solution to suggest that their usage will address the issue of persistence in landfills. Nonetheless, there may be specialized sectors where the use of biodegradable plastics is desirable, such as the packaging of fruits and vegetables that have been cultivated organically.

Originally, the strategy with plastics was to include substances, such starch that might be degraded by microbes and lead to the dissolution of the polymer into traditional plastics. But, two ideas that have recently been combined have significantly increased interest in biodegradable polymers. First off, the idea of composting plastic trash via microbial activity is recognized as an ecologically friendly way to dispose of packaging debris. This is especially appealing in cases when it is difficult to recover the plastics due to their use patterns or locations. Food packaging may include some packaging that is contaminated with food residues, which would provide a health risk during mechanical recycling and sorting. Second, there is interest in creating polymers from basic elements that are naturally renewable and already biodegradable.

The Biological Plastics Society website mentions 12 polymers that have been created from both natural and synthetic basic components, including cellulose acetate. In recent years, various novel polymers have been produced from natural basic resources, such as starch, maize and sugar. A polymer called polylactide is now used in a number of applications, including food packaging. This is used in the form of extrusion coatings, biaxially oriented coated film, and thermoformable trays. Fresh produce trays are allegedly stronger than comparable trays composed of PVC and PP.

Another strategy is based on PET technology, such as the hydrophobic, biodegradable polyester DuPont Biome. Under the correct circumstances, this substance is broken down by hydrolysis, resulting in the conversion of the material into carbon dioxide and water as well as rendering it suitable for microbial ingestion. A variety of polymers that resemble PE and PP may be produced. They are suitable for application as thermoformable sheets, blow molding, injection molding, and films.

Furthermore to be kept in mind is the fact that RCF film, a long-established commercial product made of cellulose and resembling plastic, is biodegradable. Nevertheless, as has previously been mentioned, OPP has largely replaced RCF in many packaging applications for commercial reasons.
